



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

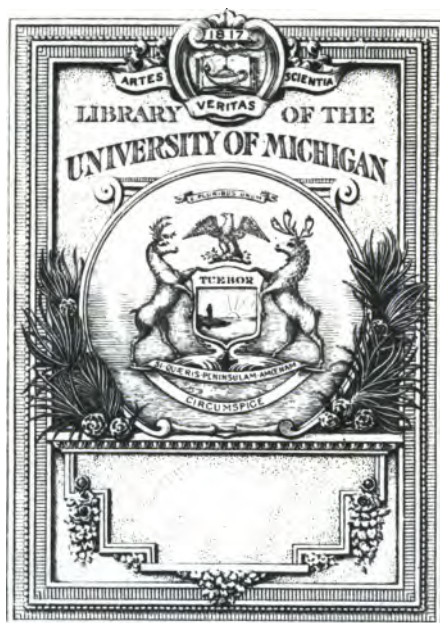
We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

A 1,015,944



891.7

412









A CONCISE GRAMMAR  
OF THE  
RUSSIAN LANGUAGE



A CONCISE GRAMMAR  
OF THE  
RUSSIAN LANGUAGE

BY

LEONARD A. MAGNUS, LL.B.

*Editor and translator of the "Armament of Igor,"  
"Russian Folk Tales," &c.*

NEW YORK  
E. P. DUTTON AND COMPANY  
1916

60

# CONTENTS.

	PAGE
Preface . . . . .	xvii
Introduction . . . . .	xix
Alphabet . . . . .	xxi
Russian Script and Italic . . . . .	xxiii
Specimen of Handwriting . . . . .	xxiv
§ 1. The Use and Value of the Letters . . . . .	1
§ 2. The Vowels—	
(1) Hard and Soft Vowels . . . . .	2
(2) а and я . . . . .	2
(3) э, е and ё . . . . .	3
(4) и, у, i, y . . . . .	3
(5) о and ё . . . . .	4
(6) y and ю . . . . .	5
(7) ъ and ь . . . . .	5
§ 3. The Consonants—Voiced and Unvoiced . . . . .	6
§ 4. General Observations on the Consonants . . . . .	6
§ 5. The Hard and Soft Consonants.—Preliminary	8
(1) The Labials п, б, м, в, ф, в . . . . .	8
(2) The Dentals т, д, н . . . . .	9
(3) The Gutturals к, г, х . . . . .	10
(4) The Sibilants and Compound Conso- nants ц, з, ш, ж, щ, ч, ч . . . . .	11
(5) The Liquids л and р . . . . .	13
§ 6. Conglomerated Consonants when Final . . . . .	14
§ 7. Transliteration into Russian . . . . .	14
§ 8. Russian Diphthongs . . . . .	15
§ 9. The Change of е to ё . . . . .	16

## ACCIDENCE.

§ 10. The Parts of Speech . . . . .	19
-------------------------------------	----

## THE NOUN.

§ 11. Preliminary Observations.—The Genders . . . . .	20
§ 12. The Declensions . . . . .	21

305039



	PAGE
§ 13. The Cases . . . . .	22
§ 14. The Numbers . . . . .	23
§ 15. Hard and Soft Nouns . . . . .	24
§ 16. The First Declension—Masculines . . . . .	25
§ 17. The First Declension—Neuters . . . . .	26
§ 18. The Second Declension in а and я . . . . .	28
§ 19. The Third Declension in и and мя—Masculines of the Third Declension—пуť . . . . .	30
§ 20. Feminines of the Third Declension . . . . .	30
§ 21. Neuters in мя of the Third Declension . . . . .	32
§ 22. Remains of Older Forms in the Third Declension—	
(1) мать, дочь . . . . .	32
(2) дитя . . . . .	33
§ 23. Discussion of the Nouns . . . . .	33
§ 24. Remarks on the Masculine Nouns of the First Declension—	
(1) Genitive and locative singular in “у”	
The “у” declension . . . . .	34
(2) Plurals in -ья . . . . .	35
(3) Plurals in -я . . . . .	36
(4) Genitive plural in -ъ . . . . .	37
(5) Nominative singular in -инъ . . . . .	38
(6) Irregular formations . . . . .	39
§ 25. Accentuation of the Masculine Nouns of the First Declension . . . . .	39
§ 26. Remarks on the Neuter Nouns of the First Declension—	
(1) Genitive plural in -ъ and -ей . . . . .	41
(2) Neuters in -ие and feminines in -ия . . . . .	42
(3) Mixed masculine and neuter declension—nouns in -ище, -ко and others . . . . .	43
(4) Plurals in -ья . . . . .	43
(5) Irregular forms—	
(а) Obsolete, небо, чудо, -ята . . . . .	44
(β) Duals . . . . .	45

# CONTENTS.

vii

	PAGE
§ 27. Accentuation of the Neuter Nouns of the First Declension . . . . .	45
§ 28. Remarks on the Second Declension—	
(1) Genitive plural in -ъ and -ѣѣ . . . . .	46
(2) Contraction of -ою, -ею to -оѣ, -ѣѣ . . . . .	47
(3) Masculine nouns in second declension . . . . .	47
(4) Nouns in -іѣ . . . . .	47
§ 29. Accentuation of Second Declension . . . . .	47
§ 30. Remarks on the Third Declension . . . . .	49
§ 31. Accentuation of the Third Declension . . . . .	49
§ 32. The “Euphonic” Vowels о, е and ѣ—	
I. Extrusion of ѣ and ѣ when unaccented . . . . .	50
II. Insertion of о and е for euphony . . . . .	52
III. What heavy final consonants are allowed . . . . .	54
IV. Remarks on the third declension . . . . .	55

## THE ADJECTIVE.

§ 33. Preliminary Observations—	
(1) The syntactical importance of the adjective . . . . .	55
(2) The use of possessive and descriptive adjectives . . . . .	56
(3) No distinction of gender in the plural . . . . .	56
(4) The predicative adjective . . . . .	56
(5) The determinative and simple adjective . . . . .	56
(6) The accentuation of the adjective . . . . .	58
(7) No third declension adjectives . . . . .	58
(8) The unnecessary grammarians’ spellings in the determinatives . . . . .	58
(9) The substantival use of adjectives . . . . .	58
§ 34. The Simple, Possessive and Descriptive Adjectives—	
(1) Examples of simple adjectives . . . . .	58
(2) Formation of possessive adjectives and examples . . . . .	59
(3) Formation of descriptive adjectives . . . . .	61

	PAGE
§ 35. The Determinative Adjectives—	
(1) The scheme and formation . . . .	62
(2) Examples . . . . .	64
§ 36. The Formation of the Predicatives—	
(1) Where no corresponding predicative exists . . . . .	68
(2) Where no corresponding determinative exists . . . . .	68
(3) Possessives . . . . .	68
(4) Instances of accentuation of predicatives . . . . .	68
§ 37. The Comparison of Adjectives.—Formation—	
(1) Comparative and superlative, how formed . . . . .	70
(2) The superlative . . . . .	70
(3) Substitutes for the superlative . . . .	71
§ 38. The Comparison of Adjectives.—Rules—	
I. Use of the uninflected form . . . .	72
II. The four simple inflected superlatives . . . .	73
III. Adjectives with no determinative comparative . . . . .	73
IV. Use of prefix <i>no</i> with indeclinable comparative . . . . .	73
V. Translation of “than” . . . . .	74
§ 39. The Comparison of Adjectives.—Examples—	
I. The regular form <i>-ѣе</i> , <i>-ѣишиѣ</i> , and accentuation . . . . .	74
II. The shorter form <i>-ѣе</i> , <i>-ѣишиѣ</i> . . . .	74
III. Comparison with words from different roots . . . . .	77

## THE PRONOUN.

§ 40. (1) Preliminary observations . . . .	77
(2) Table of Russian pronouns and adverbs .	78-9

# CONTENTS.

ix

	PAGE
§ 41. Examples of the Pronouns—	
I. The interrogative pronouns . . .	80
Remarks on кой, чей, который, сколько	81
II. The relatives кто, который . . .	81
III. The demonstratives тотъ, этотъ, оный, сей ; remarks on the use of them . . .	82
IV. The universals каждый, весь, всякій . . .	83
V. The personal pronouns and possessives	84
(1) Use of свой and себя, ся . . .	85
(2) Use of егó, ето., with preposi- tions. . . . .	85
(3) Instrumental fem. sing. in -ой	86
(4) When personal pronouns are used . . . . .	86
VI. The indefinite pronouns . . . . .	86
VII. The negative pronouns. The double negative in Russian . . . . .	87
VIII. The pronouns of identity, and самъ and самыи . . . . .	87
IX. The pronouns of difference, другои, иной, прóчие . . . . .	88

## THE VERB.

§ 42. (1) Table of Russian Verbs . . . . .	89
(2) Preliminary observations—	
(i) The parts of the Russian verb. . . . .	90
(ii) The deficiencies of the Russian verb and the aspects . . . . .	91
(iii) How the parts are formed . . . . .	92
(iv) Verbs original and derivative . . . . .	92
§ 43. The Russian Infinitive — Consonantal and Vocalic . . . . .	93
§ 44. The forms derived from the Infinitive . . . . .	94
§ 45. The formations from the 1st person sing. Present . . . . .	96
§ 46. The laws of the accentuation of the verbs . . . . .	96

	PAGE
§ 47. Paradigms of желѣть and вѣрнѣть . . . . .	98
§ 48. The Four Conjugations.—Some Phonetic Rules . . . . .	99
§ 49. The First Conjugation. The Present forms—	
I. Guttural roots, infinitives in -чь . . . . .	100
II. Nasal roots, infinitives in -ять; verbal noun and past part. pass. in т . . . . .	101
III. Sibilant roots, infinitives in -стѣ, -сть . . . . .	103
IV. Liquid roots. (1) Infinitives in -ереть, -елеть; verbal noun and past part. pass. in т . . . . .	104
(2) Infinitives in -ороть, -олоть . . . . .	104
V. Dental roots, infinitives in -стѣ, -сть . . . . .	105
идѣть, честь, сѣсть . . . . .	106
Accentuation of past tense . . . . .	107
VI. Roots in в, жнѣ, плнѣ, слнѣ . . . . .	107
VII. Consonantal roots with suffixal а in infinitive . . . . .	108
§ 50. The Second Conjugation in -нѣть. Preliminary.	
I. "Instantaneous" verbs and their accentuation . . . . .	109
II. "Inchoative" verbs and their accentuation . . . . .	110
III. Examples of conjugation . . . . .	111
§ 51. The Third Conjugation.—Preliminary . . . . .	112
§ 52. The Original Verbs of the Third Conjugation.	
I. Those in which termination is directly to root—	
(1) Liquid roots, олоть, ороть . . . . .	112
(2) Vocalic roots (а) in "а" знѣть, снѣть . . . . .	113
(β) Roots in и, бнѣть, etc., past part. pass. in т . . . . .	113
(γ) Roots in у, днѣть, past part. pass. in т . . . . .	113
(δ) Roots in ѣ, смѣть . . . . .	113
(ε) Verbs in нѣть and пѣть, past part. pass. in т . . . . .	114
II. Verbs with suffixal infinitive in -ать, -яъ, and accentuation . . . . .	115
слѣть, слѣть, дыхѣть, etc. . . . .	116

# CONTENTS.

xi

	PAGE
§ 53. Derivative Verbs of the Third Conjugation—	
(1) From nouns in -ать, -ять . . . . .	116
(2) Inceptives in -ѣть . . . . .	116
Accentuation of them . . . . .	117
(3) I. Derivatives in -овать, and accentua- tion. Derivatives in -ировать, and accentuation . . . . .	117
II. Original verbs in -овать, -евать . . . . .	118
(4) Iteratives in -ать, -ять . . . . .	119
(5) Iteratives in -ывать, -ивать . . . . .	119
давать, ставать, знавать . . . . .	120
§ 54. The Fourth Conjugation. Preliminary—	
Inf. in -ѣть, -ить . . . . .	120
§ 55. The Fourth Conjugation. Original Verbs—	
I. In -ать, -ять, гнать, стоять, спать . . . . .	121
II. In -ѣть, -ать, and accentuation . . . . .	122
Past tense in -ѣлъ . . . . .	123
хотѣть, бѣжать . . . . .	123
Accentuation of original verbs in -ить . . . . .	124
§ 56. The Fourth Conjugation. Derivative Verbs. Accentuation and origins . . . . .	125
§ 57. Anomalous Verbs—	
I. Mixed conjugations. The same root throughout. реѣть, хотѣть, -дѣть, стать, постѣть, обратѣть, -шибѣть . . . . .	126
II. Using different roots. идти, быть (and its compounds), ѣхать . . . . .	127
III. Obsolete forms. здать, verbs in “м,” вѣмъ, есмь, ѣсть, дать . . . . .	128
§ 58. The Aspects of the Verbs. Preliminary . . . . .	130
Perfective—Imperfective—Abstract—Itera- tive — Instantaneous — Causative — In- ceptive . . . . .	131
Verbs having no perfective . . . . .	132

	PAGE
§ 59. The Formation of the Aspects—	
I. (1) From original verbs . . . . .	133
Monosyllabic roots. Those naturally	
perfective . . . . .	133
Iteratives in -áть, -вáть . . . . .	134
When compounded . . . . .	134
-честь and -читáть . . . . .	135
(2) Second conjugation in -нуть . . . . .	135
The “instantaneous” aspect . . . . .	135
(3) Third conjugation. Prepositions	
to form perfective . . . . .	135
Iteratives in -ивать, -áть . . . . .	136
двѣгать, двигáть, etc. . . . .	137
(4) Fourth conjugation. Original verbs	
in -ить, -ѣть. Imperfective in -ять.	
Abstract forms in -áть, -я́ть, -и́ть. . . . .	137
When compounded, abstract is	
imperfective . . . . .	138
Iterative forms in -áть, -я́ть . . . . .	139
Iteratives in -ивать, -ывать . . . . .	140
II. The formation of perfective of derivative	
verbs . . . . .	140
With prepositions . . . . .	140
III. Aspects formed from a different root.	
Perfective and imperfective, concrete	
and abstract . . . . .	141
IV. The aspects of compounded verbs in -ить,	
-я́ть, -áть, -ну́ть, -ива́ть . . . . .	142
V. Causatives and inceptives in -ить and -ѣть	145
VI. По and за as forming depreciatory, or	
diminutive, and inceptive aspects . . . . .	146
§ 60. Reflexive and Passive Verbs—другъ другá . . . . .	147

# CONTENTS.

xiii

	THE NUMERALS.	PAGE
§ 61.	Preliminary . . . . .	149
§ 62.	I. The numerals 1-10 . . . . .	150
	Declension of <i>о́ба</i> . . . . .	152
	II. The numerals 11-90 . . . . .	152
	III. The numerals 100-1,000,000.— <i>сто</i> . . . . .	153
	The compound numerals.— <i>ты́сяча</i> . . . . .	154
	IV. Notes—	
	(1) Frequency . . . . .	155
	(2) Distributives . . . . .	155
	(3) Nought . . . . .	155
	(4) Noun governed by last numeral . . . . .	155
	(5) Decimals . . . . .	156
	(6) Compound ordinals and examples . . . . .	156
	(7) Declension of <i>два</i> with nouns— <i>двѣи</i> , etc. . . . .	157
	(8) Fractions— <i>полови́на</i> , <i>полтора́</i> ; пол- compounds . . . . .	158
	(9) Dates— <i>годъ</i> and <i>лѣто</i> . . . . .	160
§ 63.	THE ADVERBS . . . . .	160
§ 64.	THE PREPOSITIONS . . . . .	161
§ 65.	THE CONJUNCTIONS . . . . .	161
§ 66.	THE INTERJECTIONS . . . . .	161

# SYNTAX.

§ 67.	Preliminary—Concord—Order of Words— Predominance of Adjective . . . . .	162
§ 68.	The Article . . . . .	163
§ 69.	The Cases—	
	I. Nominative . . . . .	163
	II. Vocative . . . . .	164
	III. Accusative as object . . . . .	164
	Special uses: duration . . . . .	165



	PAGE
IV. Genitive . . . . .	165
(i) Ownership — Possessive adjectives — Subjective genitive and objective always follows	166
(ii) Partitive . . . . .	170
(iii) In impersonal sentences . . . . .	171
(iv) Replaced by dative . . . . .	171
(v) After comparatives . . . . .	172
(vi) Objective case . . . . .	172
(vii) After certain adjectives and verbs	172
(viii) Dates . . . . .	173
(ix) Partitive sense . . . . .	173
(x) Descriptive . . . . .	173
V. The Dative . . . . .	174
VI. Instrumental . . . . .	175
(1) Agent . . . . .	175
(2) Means . . . . .	175
(3) Predicative . . . . .	176
(4) Manner . . . . .	176
(5) Measurement . . . . .	176
(6) Words of quality . . . . .	177
(7) Time . . . . .	177
(8) After certain verbs . . . . .	177
VII. The Locative. . . . .	177
§ 70. Table of Prepositions and Particles . . . . .	178-9
§ 71. The Prepositions and Particles.—Preliminary	180
§ 72. The Prepositions governing only the Accusative	181
§ 73 (1). The Prepositions governing only the Genitive . . . . .	182
§ 73 (2). The Prepositions governing only the Dative . . . . .	187
§ 74. The Prepositions governing only the Instrumental and между . . . . .	188
§ 75. The Prepositions governing only the Locative	189
§ 76. The Prepositions подъ, предъ and за . . . . .	189
§ 77. The Prepositions въ, о and на . . . . .	193
§ 78. The Prepositions по and съ. . . . .	198
§ 79. The Verbal Prefixes воз, вы, пере, пре, разъ	201
§ 80. The Accentuation of Prepositions and Particles	204

# CONTENTS.

XV

	PAGE
§ 81. The Numerals—	
I. The date, days, months, etc. . . . .	206
II. Age . . . . .	208
III. Adjectives compounded with numerals . . . . .	209
IV. The time of day . . . . .	209
V. Fractions . . . . .	210
VI. Russian money . . . . .	212
VII. Frequencies . . . . .	212
VIII. One cardinal now obsolete . . . . .	213
IX. Cards . . . . .	213
§ 82. The Pronouns—	
I. Interrogative . . . . .	214
II. Relative . . . . .	214
III. Indefinite pronouns. Use of <i>ни</i> . . . . .	215
IV. The reciprocal pronouns . . . . .	216
V. The negative pronouns . . . . .	217
§ 83. The Russian Appellatives—	
I. In conversation — <i>вы, ты, баринъ,</i> patronymics. . . . .	218
II. Between masters and servants . . . . .	220
III. Addressing meetings . . . . .	221
IV. Titles . . . . .	221
V. Addressing letters . . . . .	223
§ 84. Interrogative sentences— <i>ли, развѣ</i> . . . . .	225
§ 85. Negative sentences . . . . .	225
§ 86. The Verb “to be,” omission of “copula” . . . . .	228
§ 87. The Verb “to have” . . . . .	230
§ 88. Special use of Infinitive . . . . .	231
§ 89. The Gerundives and Participles—	
I. The gerundives . . . . .	232
II. The participles — past and present. -мый = -ble. . . . .	232
§ 90. Subordinate Clauses—	
I. Temporal . . . . .	234
II. Causal . . . . .	235
III. Conditional . . . . .	235
IV. Final. (1) Purpose. (2) Effect . . . . .	237
V. Reported Speech . . . . .	238

	PAGE
§ 91. The Imperative. Full forms . . . .	241
Adverbial, Preterite and Conditional uses— помогъ . . . . .	241
§ 92. Further illustrations of the Aspects . . . .	243
§ 93. The Auxiliaries . . . . .	247
давно, буду, стану, будто . . . . .	247
только что, бывало . . . . .	248
было, the future perfect . . . . .	249
§ 94. The Impersonal Construction—	
I. Impersonal verbs . . . . .	249
II. Translation of “one” (says) . . . . .	250
III. Impersonal construction of active verbs . . . . .	250
§ 95. Apocopated forms of some Verbs . . . . .	250
§ 96. The Reflexive Verbs . . . . .	251
Passives, Causatives, Deponents, “Middle” Voice . . . . .	252
§ 97. Russian Relationships . . . . .	253
Table of Kinship . . . . .	258
Table of Affinity . . . . .	259
ETYMOLOGY.—Preliminary.—Accentuation . . . . .	260
§ 98. The Nouns—	
I. Foreign terminations in common use . . . . .	260
II. Disused or dead suffixes . . . . .	261
III. Patronymics . . . . .	262
IV. Termination to denote the feminine . . . . .	262
V. Abstract nouns . . . . .	262
VI. Verbal nouns . . . . .	263
VII. The agent or implement . . . . .	264
VIII. Diminutives—	
(1) Masculines of first declension . . . . .	265
(2) Neuters of first declension . . . . .	265
(3) Feminines and masculines of second declension . . . . .	266
IX. Augmentatives . . . . .	267
X. Miscellaneous . . . . .	267
§ 99. Adjectival Suffixes . . . . .	268
§ 100. Verbal Formations . . . . .	270

## PREFACE.

THE Russian language is becoming daily of increasing importance, both commercially and literarily. It is used over nearly one-seventh of the world, from Petrograd to Vladivostók and in the other Slav States. The literature, popular and cultivated, technical and scientific, published in Russia, must claim the attention of students to the same degree as German has done in the past.

The greatest puzzle in Russian is the accentuation, which governs the pronunciation and inflection, and seems utterly arbitrary. To a large extent it can be scientifically and simply explained, and to this feature the author has devoted especial care.

The difficulties of the language cannot be denied ; but they have been accentuated by two accidents : first, that all grammars were constructed on a plan merely imitative of Latin ; secondly, that they mostly came from Germany, and were framed in accordance with the requirements of the German mind.

It is with the ambition of writing a book on Russian grammar that shall translate Russian into English idiom, and shall proceed on lines more consonant with the genius of Slav speech, that this book has been attempted.

The author wishes to express his obligations to many friends, English and Russian, who have rendered him invaluable assistance, and, in particular, to Mr. Mark Sieff and Mr. J. H. G. Grattan ; and to acknowledge his indebtedness to Berneker's Russian studies, and the essays of Professor Boyer (of the Sorbonne).

This grammar, whilst aiming at being practical, is based on historical and philological methods. Explanatory notes on apparent irregularities are added in smaller type, the principal rules being made prominent by italics or otherwise. This grammar should be used in conjunction with one of the progressive readers now being published in England.

L. A. M.



## INTRODUCTION.

---

THE modern Russian language is spoken over the whole extent of the Russian Empire. It originated as the dialect of the Principality of Moscow and the Republic of Nóvgorod, and thus at first embraced all the provinces or governments of Russia proper, except Volhynia, Podolia, Poltáva and Southern Russia (where a dialect called Little-Russian is spoken). In Minsk, Gródno and Vílna another dialect is spoken, called White-Russian.

Russian belongs to the Slavonic branch of the Aryan or Indo-European family of languages; other kindred tongues are Polish, Čech or Bohemian, Moravian, Serbian and Bulgarian.

The Slavonic peoples mostly belong to the Orthodox or Eastern Church. They received their alphabet, their civilisation and their ritual from Constantinople, and hence mostly use modernized or adapted forms of the Cyrillic alphabet, which was created by Saint Cyril and Saint Method in the ninth century on the basis of the Greek alphabet.

Those Slav peoples who belong to the Roman confession use the Latin or Roman alphabet, as we do;

but, to provide symbols for the many sounds, very numerous diacritical marks have had to be added, e.g. а, е, ё, ъ, з, ѝ, ѣ, etc. The Cyrillic alphabet was invented expressly for the Slavonic languages; and, though the signs are at first strange, they express the sounds more accurately, and, in reality, aid the learner considerably.

The first task of the student of Russian is to familiarise himself with the alphabet, *both* printed and written, so that he may read and write it with ease and promptitude.

*In English the vowels a, e, i, o, u have, since Shakespeare's time, been grotesquely diverted from their original value and the general Continental use. The reader must understand that in this Grammar a, e, i, o, u are used as in Italian or German: i.e. ah, cortège, pique, poke, rule; except where specially stated otherwise.*

## THE RUSSIAN ALPHABET.

The Russian Alphabet consists of thirty-six letters. Of these there are twelve vowels, а, е, ѳ, і, ѵ, о, у, ѡ, ё, э, ю, я; twenty-one consonants, б, в, г, д, ж, з, к, л, м, н, п, р, с, т, ф, х, ц, ч, ш, щ, ѳ; one semi-vowel, ѳ (і krátkøyi); and two letters which have no sound-value of their own, ѣ, ѥ—they influence the softening or hardening of the consonant immediately preceding them.

Printed.	Italic.	Name.	Corresponding Value.	Transliteration.
Caps. Ord.	Caps. Ord.			
А а	А а	а (as in <i>ah</i> )	а ( <i>father</i> )	а
Б б	Б б	бе (like English <i>bay</i> )	б	б
В в	В в	ве (as in Eng. <i>vale</i> )	в	в
Г г	Г г	ге (like English <i>gay</i> )	г*	г
Д д	Д д	де (like English <i>day</i> )	д	д
Е е	Е е	је (like English <i>yea</i> )	је	е or ye
Ж ж	Ж ж	же (like French <i>gear</i> )	{ ž (like s in } { <i>leisure</i> ) }	ž
З з	З з	зе (like English <i>zay</i> )	з	z
И и	И и	і (like English 'e)	{ і (as in } { <i>pique</i> ) }	і
І ѳ	І ѳ	и краткое (і krátkøyi)	{ у (as in } { <i>yet</i> ) }	у
І ѳ	І ѳ	и съ точкой (і stóčkøy)	{ і (as in } { <i>pique</i> ) }	і
К к	К к	ка (like English <i>kah</i> )	к	к
Л л	Л л	елл	л	л

\* Always "hard" as in Give.



Printed.	Italic.	Name.	Corresponding Value.	Transliteration.
Caps. Ord.	Caps. Ord.			
<b>M</b> <b>м</b>	<i><b>M</b> <b>м</b></i>	em	m	m
<b>Н</b> <b>н</b>	<i><b>H</b> <b>н</b></i>	en	n	n
<b>O</b> <b>о</b>	<i><b>O</b> <b>о</b></i>	o (as in <i>stock</i> )	o	o
<b>П</b> <b>п</b>	<i><b>П</b> <b>п</b></i>	pe (as in <i>pay</i> )	p	p
<b>P</b> <b>р</b>	<i><b>P</b> <b>р</b></i>	err (as in Scotch <i>air</i> )	r	r
<b>C</b> <b>с</b>	<i><b>C</b> <b>с</b></i>	ess	s	s
<b>T</b> <b>т</b>	<i><b>T</b> <b>т</b></i>	te (as in <i>tay</i> )	t	t
<b>У</b> <b>у</b>	<i><b>У</b> <b>у</b></i>	u (as in <i>rule</i> )	u	u
<b>Ф</b> <b>ф</b>	<i><b>Ф</b> <b>ф</b></i>	eff	f	f
<b>X</b> <b>х</b>	<i><b>X</b> <b>х</b></i>	khah	{ch in <i>loch</i> or German <i>ch</i> }	kh
<b>Ц</b> <b>ц</b>	<i><b>Ц</b> <b>ц</b></i>	tse (as in <i>tsay</i> )	ts	ts
<b>Ч</b> <b>ч</b>	<i><b>Ч</b> <b>ч</b></i>	če (as in <i>chaste</i> )	English <i>ch</i>	č
<b>Ш</b> <b>ш</b>	<i><b>Ш</b> <b>ш</b></i>	ša (as in <i>shah</i> )	English <i>sh</i>	š
<b>Щ</b> <b>щ</b>	<i><b>Щ</b> <b>щ</b></i>	<del>šča</del> <i>sch</i>	<del>{sch rapidly}</del> {combined*}	šč
<del><b>Ъ</b> <b>ъ</b></del>	<del><i><b>Ъ</b> <b>ъ</b></i></del>	yerr (еръ)	mute	—
<b>Ы</b> <b>ы</b>	<i><b>Ы</b> <b>ы</b></i>	very (еры)	{y like i in <i>swim</i> }	y
<del><b>Ь</b> <b>ь</b></del>	<del><i><b>Ь</b> <b>ь</b></i></del>	yeri (ерь)	mute	—
<del><b>Ѣ</b> <b>ѣ</b></del>	<del><i><b>Ѣ</b> <b>ѣ</b></i></del>	yati (ять)	{like Russian e}	ě
<b>Э</b> <b>э</b>	<i><b>Э</b> <b>э</b></i>	e (like English <i>ě</i> )	{like <i>ě</i> in <i>ell</i> }	e
<b>Ю</b> <b>ю</b>	<i><b>Ю</b> <b>ю</b></i>	yu (like English <i>yu</i> )	yu	yu
<b>Я</b> <b>я</b>	<i><b>Я</b> <b>я</b></i>	ya (like English <i>yah</i> !)	ya	ya
<del><b>Ѧ</b> <b>ѧ</b></del>	<del><i><b>Ѧ</b> <b>ѧ</b></i></del>	fitá	f	
<b>Ѧ</b> <b>ѧ</b>	<i><b>Ѧ</b> <b>ѧ</b></i>	izitsa	like u	

\* Sounded like shch in *freshcheese*.

RUSSIAN SCRIPT AND ITALIC.

Cursive.		Italic.		Cursive.		Italic.	
А	а	А	а	В	в	С	с
Б	б	Б	б	М	м	Т	т
В	в	В	в	У	у	У	у
Г	г	Г	г	Ф	ф	Ф	ф
Д	д	Д	д	Х	х	Х	х
Е	е	Е	е	Ц	ц	Ц	ц
Ж	ж	Ж	ж	Ч	ч	Ч	ч
З	з	З	з	Ш	ш	Ш	ш
И	и	И	и	Щ	щ	Щ	щ
Й	й	Й	й	Ъ	ъ	Ъ	ъ
І	і	І	і	Ы	ы	Ы	ы
К	к	К	к	Ь	ь	Ь	ь
Л	л	Л	л	Ѧ	Ѧ	Ѧ	Ѧ
М	м	М	м	Ѣ	Ѣ	Ѣ	Ѣ
Н	н	Н	н	Ю	ю	Ю	ю
О	о	О	о	Я	я	Я	я
П	п	П	п	Ѧ	Ѧ	Ѧ	Ѧ
Р	р	Р	р	Ѧ	Ѧ	Ѧ	Ѧ

## SPECIMEN OF HANDWRITING.

Въ минуту жизни трудную  
 Тьснится-ль въ сердце грусть  
 Одну молитву чудную  
 Твержу я наизусть

Есть сила благодатная  
 Въ созвучьи словъ живыхъ  
 И дышетъ непонятная  
 Святая прелесть въ нихъ  
 Съ души какъ бремя скатится  
 Сомненья далеко  
 И върится и плачется  
 И такъ легко, легко

## ITALIC.

Въ минуту жизни трудную  
 Тьснится-ль въ сердце грусть  
 Одну молитву чудную  
 Твержу я наизусть

Есть сила благодатная  
 Въ созвучьи словъ живыхъ  
 И дышетъ непонятная  
 Святая прелесть въ нихъ  
 Съ души какъ бремя скатится  
 Сомненья далеко  
 И върится и плачется  
 И такъ легко, легко.

(Термонтовъ.)

# RUSSIAN GRAMMAR.

## THE ALPHABET.

PARTICULAR attention is drawn to *б, г, д, у, ж, н, ъ, е, м, ѳ*; letters which often occasion the learner difficulty. To distinguish *м* and *у* in loose writing, a line is often used above and below, e.g. *м̄, ӯ*.

Remember in all transliterations *а, е, и, о, у* should be sounded as in *father, cortège* (*or été*, v. footnote, p. 3), *pique, Tom, rule*.

### § 1. THE USE AND VALUE OF THE LETTERS.

The Russian language is nearly phonetic, but has kept a number of letters that have lost their separate values, e.g. *и, ѳ, в, е*; and further, like English, has a strong tonic accent, which tends to slur the preceding and following syllables.

e.g. *Wólverhampton, indúbitably, my lórd, láboratory, Súnđäy, désultoriness.*

In such English words the vowels all become merged in the atonic vowel, phonetically written *ə* (e.g. *a* in "villa"), and in Russian a similar phenomenon obtains.

But the Russian alphabet, *with these reservations*, has symbols assigned to every separate sound, and thus is nearly phonetic.

The Russian tonic accent is very hard to acquire, and can only be learnt by practice. A few hints can be given here and there. *In this Grammar it is marked throughout, as in all dictionaries.*

## § 2. THE VOWELS.

(1) Russian has no less than fifteen symbols for vowels. They are partly survivals of an older stage of the language.

They are divided into "hard" and "soft," i.e. simple, or preceded by the consonant *y*. This distinction affects the grammar and pronunciation of every word, and the following table must be committed to memory:—

<i>Hard</i> :	а	э	ы	о	у	ъ
<i>Soft</i> :	я	е, ѣ	и, і, ѵ	ё	ю	ь

(2) a *accented*\* is sounded like *a* in "father," but somewhat shorter.

Pronunciation of *a* and *я*. e.g. баба woman

a *unaccented* is sounded like *a* in "villa." e.g. баба.

The familiar phonetic symbol for this sound is *ə*, the *atonic* vowel. Thus баба is sounded "bábə."

Unaccented *a* is sounded like the Russian *e* after ж, ч, ш, щ. [v. § 5 (4).]

я *accented* is sounded *ya*. e.g. я I.

я *unaccented* is sounded *yə* or *yi* or *i*.

e.g. Баба-яга (Bábə-yigá), the name of the Russian witch; любить (lyúbit) they love.

In one instance я is sounded *a* in the reflexive suffix ся (sa). [v. § 41, V. (1).]

я (*ya*) also represents the Old Slav *nasal vowel* *ę* (sounded like French *in* in "brin"). This historical fact explains such verbal forms as жать, жму́, жну́, root žh, žh, and nouns in -мя, e.g. пламя, пламени flame. [v. § 21 and § 49, II.] Polish conserves the Old Slav nasals *o* and *ę*, e.g. sędzić, Russian сѣдить (súd'it') to judge.

---

\* "Accented" means emphasised, stressed. There are no written accents in Russian, except in elementary grammars and texts.

(3) э is used in foreign words adapted to Russian, but in no pure Russian words except  
 Pronunciation of э, е, ѣ. *э́тотъ* (étot) this. It is sounded like the French è in "trève," or the English *ai* in "hair," but shorter. It is only used in transliteration of foreign *e*-sounds.

e.g. Э́мденъ Emden, по́этъ (po-ét) poet, Э́нъ Aisne

e and ѣ now represent the same sound, namely *yě*. In older Russian ѣ had a separate value, varying between *yě* and *ya*.\*

e.g. Екате́рія (Yekaterína) Catherine  
 ѣ́мъ (yem) I eat

e is used:—

- (i) When it represents *ě* [v. § 2 (5) and § 9].
- (ii) When it is inserted to avoid heavy consonants and represents *ь* [v. § 2 (7) and § 32]; e.g. *весь, вся* (veś, fsya) all.

*When unaccented* it becomes a faint *yě* or *i* sound.

e.g. по́ле (pólyě) field      сѣ́нее (sínyěyě) blue

The pronouns *о́дні* and *о́днѣ*, *о́ні* masc., *о́нѣ* fem. and neuter, are both sounded *о́дні*, *о́ні* (adní, aní).

(4) The sound-value of *ы* is best understood as a rapid combination of German *ü* with *i*,  
 Pronunciation of *ы* and *и*. *үй*; or, it may be got by placing the tongue in the *u* position, the lips in the *i* position. *Roughly*, it may be produced by sounding the English word *bin* deep in the throat.

*No word can ever begin with the vowel ы.*

---

\* The sound "ye" (e and ѣ) is open [yě] or close [yé] according as the following consonant is "hard" or "soft."

**и** is the pure *i*-sound, produced with elongation of the lips, as in French or German.

**і** (**и** съ точкою = with a dot) is the same, but only used *before* other vowels (e.g. мнѣніе [mněniě] opinion), except in one word, міръ the world.

When **и** is used in diphthongs or reduced to the consonantal value of *y* in "yet," it is written **ѣ** and called **и краткое** (**и** short).

e.g. стаѣ (stāi) flock

**ѵ** (ѵжица) is equivalent to **и**, and only used to represent the Greek *υ* in a few Church words.

*Note.*—міръ world, миръ peace, мѣро мѣръ, сѣнодь synod, and Владиміръ Vladímir (and similar names, e.g. Казіміръ).

(5) **о** *accented* is sounded like the German short *o* in Pronunciation "Gott," and can be imitated by *shortening* of *o* and *ѧ*. the English vowel-sound *au* (e.g. cough).

e.g. роу horn

**о** *unaccented* is sounded *a* or *ə*.

e.g. хорошó	(khərəšó)	fine
порá	(pará)	time
слово	(slóvnə)	word

**ѧ** is sounded *yó*, i.e. *o* with a *yod*-sound. It *only occurs* in accented syllables, and *in writing is not distinguished* from *e*, except in elementary books. Rules are given in § 9 for the change from *e* to *ѧ*.

e.g. ружьѧ	(ružó)	gun
несѧте	(nisyóte)	ye carry
жѧны	(žóny)	the wives
ѧлушка	(yóluškə)	fir-tree

(6) *y* is sounded like *u* in "rule" or "pull"; *ю* is sounded like *u* in "universe," but of *y* and *ю*. shorter.

e.g. юбиле́й (yubiléy) jubilee  
несу́ (nisú) I carry

(7) *ъ* and *ь* are mute in modern Russian. The former indicates the hardness of a consonant; the latter the softness, i.e. the absence or presence of a *yod* element.

e.g. былъ (byl') he was      вѣзъ (vyas) elm  
быль (byl') a tale      вѣзъ (vyas) bond

But in older Russian *ъ* had a value something like the *u* in "nut," and *ь* a soft short *i*-sound.

Hence the differences in conjugation and declension between родъ, рѣда (родъ generation), and ротъ, рѣа (ротъ mouth), рубѣть to rub, рубѣ I rub.

This is because in all open syllables (i.e. ending in a vowel) *ъ* and *ь* became mute; in all closed syllables (i.e. ending in a consonant) *ъ* and *ь* disappeared when unaccented, or became *o* and *e* when accented. E.g. дѣно́, дѣпѣ' (the bottom), now дно, донѣ; рѣто́, рѣта́ (the mouth), now ротъ, рта; дѣно́, дѣна́ (day), now день, дня [d'nyá].

Obviously then *ъ* and *ь* can only occur *medially* (in compounds) and *finally*.

Further, theoretically no Russian word ends in a consonant; the mute vowel is always added, even in foreign words.

e.g. Лондо́нъ London      Брю́ссель Brussels

Latterly, there is a tendency to discard final *ъ*, when it is merely orthographical.



## § 3, THE CONSONANTS—VOICED AND UNVOICED.

The consonants must first be divided into *unvoiced* and *voiced* (e.g. in English *t* and *d*, *p* and *b*).

We then have:—

	<i>Labials.</i>	<i>Dentals.</i>	<i>Gutturals.</i>
Mutes unvoiced:	п	т	к
„ voiced:	б	д	г
Nasals:	м	н	—
Spirants unvoiced:	ф, θ	—	х
„ voiced:	в	—	—

The remainder must be separately classed:—

	<i>Sibilants.</i>	<i>Compound consonants.</i>
Unvoiced:	с, ш	ч, ц, щ
Voiced:	з, ж	<del>ж, ж</del> —

Liquids: л and р.

## § 4. GENERAL OBSERVATIONS ON THE CONSONANTS.

(1) There is no nasal guttural in Russian, like the English *ng*.

e.g. *жѣнка* (*žón-ka*) little woman (нк as in *pancake*)

(2) When б, д, г, в, з, and ж are *final* consonants, they are sounded like п, т, к, ф, с, and ш.

e.g. рабъ	(rap)	slave
дѣдъ	(d'ět)	grandfather
рогъ	(rok)	horn
островъ	(óstrɔf)	island
ложъ	(loš)	lie
розъ	(ros)	of the roses

(3) When in compounds **т** precedes **д**, the first **т** is assimilated to **д**.

e.g. **отда́тъ** (ad-dát') to give up

(4) When in the same syllable **з** precedes **ж**, or **с** precedes **ш**, the combination is sounded like **жж**, and **шш**.

e.g. **позже́** (požži) later  
**вы́шшій** (vyšši) highest

(5) **ѣ** is scarcely found in original Russian words; **ѣ** is almost disused, and has the same phonetic value, just as *ph* in "phonetic" has the same sound as *f* in "fine."

(6) When **к** and **г** precede **т** in the same syllable, they are commonly sounded as **х** (kh).

e.g. **но́гтя** (nókhtya) of the nail  
**кто́** (khtō) who

(7) Other instances of assimilation (*these constitute rules*):—

<b>бу́дто</b>	(búttə)	as if
<b>сдѣ́лать</b>	(zdělət')	to do
<b>отъ за́ри</b>	(adzarí)	from the dawn
<b>про́сба</b>	(próz'bə)	request
<b>сча́стье</b>	(ščást'e)	happiness
<b>изво́зчикъ</b>	(izvóščik)	driver
<b>что́</b>	(štō)	what
<b>ми́гкій</b>	(myákghi)	soft
<b>ле́гче</b>	(lékhče)	easier

*Generally speaking the subsequent letter, voiced or unvoiced, attracts and assimilates the preceding.*

(8) ч before н is sounded ш.

e.g. скучно (skúšnə) weary

(9) All consonants are sounded, *except* л and р in -здн-, -стн-; л in солнце (sóntsi) sun; ль final after labials.

e.g. поздний (pózni) late  
 властный (vlásny) powerful  
 рубль (rup') rouble  
 мысль (mýs') thought

## § 5. THE "HARD" AND "SOFT" CONSONANTS.

### *Preliminary.*

The vowels have already been divided into two sets *hard* and *soft*, i.e. plain and ioticised, viz. :—

<i>Hard :</i>	а	э	ы	о	у	ь
<i>Soft :</i>	я	е ъ	и і	ё	ю	ь

Some consonants can be combined with any of the vowels. *These consonants are either hard or soft according as the vowel following is hard or soft.*

*Other* consonants are *naturally* "hard" or "soft," and can *only* be used with certain vowels.

*The strictest attention must be paid to these rules; as they explain the inflections, and dispose of most of the apparent exceptions.*

### (1) *The Labials.*

The labials п, б, м, в can *all* be either "hard" or "soft," and can be used with *any* of the vowels.

But note that л is inserted after п, б, м, and в in

all "soft" nominal forms and in all verbal forms before ю and е.

e.g. ловѣть	(lavít')	to catch
ловлю	(lavlyú)	catch
торговѣть	(tərgəvát')	to trade
торговля	(tərgóvlya)	trade

Otherwise п, б, м, ф, в are sounded like English p, b, m, f, v, *subject to the general remarks in § 4 (2).*

## (2) The Dentals.

The dentals can be used with *any* of the vowels. But they modify their pronunciation, and are changed in derivatives and verbal forms into palatals when "soft."

т, д and н "hard" are sounded as in English.

ть and дь are sounded midway between t and č, something like the cockney "don't-yer know?" "did-you?"

нь is sounded *mouillé* like Spanish ñ, French and Italian *gn*.

These sounds are here denoted *t'*, *d'* and *ñ*.

Thus we have:—

*Hard*: та [тэ] ты то ту ть

*Soft*: тя те ти тө тю ть, sounded t'a, t'e, etc.

*Soft derivatives*: че чь

e.g. платѣть	(plat'ít')	to pay
плачу́	(plačú)	I pay
молотѣть	(məłət'ít')	to thrash
молочу́	(məłəčú)	I thrash
молотѣтъ	(məłót'ít)	they thrash

Under identical conditions **д** changes to **ж**.

e.g. стыдѣ́ться (stydítsa) to be ashamed  
стыдѣ́тся (stydýatsa) they are ashamed  
*but* стыжѹ́сь (styžús') I am ashamed

Russian, however, has some Church Slavonic derivatives, in which under these same conditions **т** became **щ**, and **д**, **жд**.

e.g. предѣ́ (přet) before (preposition)  
прѣ́жде (přéždi) before (adverb)  
сла́д-кѣй (slátki) sweet, сла́ще (slášče) sweeter  
родѣ́ть (rad'ít') to bear, рождѣ́ть (raždát')

### (3) *The Gutturals.*

The gutturals **к**, **г**, **х** are in Russian words *never* combined with **я**, **э**, **ы**, **ѣ**, **ю**, **ь**.

In Old Russian, before these vowels, they were regularly changed in *all* nominal and verbal inflections and in all derivatives to **ц** and **ч**, **ж** and **ш** or **с** respectively. In modern Russian these changes only take place in verbs and derivatives.

The series of hard and soft gutturals is as follows:—

*Hard:* ка ко ку къ

*Soft:* ке ки

*Soft Derivatives:* ча че чн чо ор чѣ чу  
ор цн цу

Similarly with **г** and **х**; but **г** changes to **ж**, and **х** to **ш**.

Thus: га ге ги го гу гь  
Derivatives жа же жи жо ор жѣ жу жь  
ха хе хи хо ху хь  
Derivatives ша ше ши шо ор шѣ шу шь ор шь.

Thus in Russian the “hard” noun волкъ (volk) wolf, has a plural волки, but an adjective волчій.

Thus, too:—

Прага (Prágə) Prague, has an adjective Пражскій  
 Богъ (Bokh) God, Божество (Bažestvó) deity  
 скакать (skakát') to leap, скачу́ (skačú) I leap (= кю)  
 верхъ (vérkh) above, вершина (viršinə) the height

к is always like the English *k* except in cases noted in § 4 (6).

г is always like the English *g* in “got” or “give”: *except* (1) it is used to represent the foreign sound *h*, e.g. Голландія (Gollándiya) Holland; also in the Russian word Господь (Haspód') Lord. (2) It is sounded like a voiced *x* before dentals, e.g. тогда́ (takhdá) then; also in Богъ God, and names of towns ending in бургъ. (3) It is sounded в in the adjective gen. sing. termination -aro, -oro.

e.g. саморó (səməvó) of himself  
 дурно́ро (durnónvə) of the bad man  
 добро́ро (dóbrəvə) of the good man

х is always sounded as in German *ach* or *ich*.

e.g. хата (khata) hut  
 хилы́й (khíly) feeble  
 саха́рь (sákhər) sugar

#### (4) *The Sibilants and Compound Consonants.*

с, з, ш, ж, ч are *always* sounded like the consonants in the English words sword, zeal, short, leisure, church; subject to the general remarks in § 4 (2, 7, and 8).

c and з can be hard or soft and take any vowel. When "soft" they are sounded high on the palate, as though a sharp *i*-sound followed. They are here denoted as *ś* and *ź*.

ш is a combination of *ś* and *ž*, which has to be practised.

ж, ш, and ц are always hard.

ч and щ always soft.

They can only be used with the following vowels:—

*Hard*: жа же жи жо or жё жу жь or жъ  
 ша ше ши шё or шо шу шь or шъ  
 ца це цы and ци цо цу цъ

ю, я, ы are never used after ж, ч or щ.

c and з in soft derivatives change to ш and ж, e.g. *здѣсь* (zd'ěs) hear, *близъ* (bliz) near, *здѣшній*, *близній*.

*Soft*: ча че чи чо or чё чу чъ  
 ща ще щи що or шё шу щъ

However, though in modern Russian the three sibilants ш, ж, џ are accounted hard, in older Russian ш and ж were soft; and the same rules of pronunciation in unaccented syllables apply to *ша*, *жа*, *ча* and *ща* as to *я*, viz. the vowel-value changes from *a* to *i*, and not *a* to *ə*.

e.g. <i>часовня</i>	(česóvnya)	clock-tower
<i>жара</i>	(žara or žirá)	heat
<i>шаги</i>	(šegí)	steps

ц is always hard; it can, *unlike* any of the other sibilants, be followed by ы; and, *like* them, unaccented цо always becomes, and is written, це.

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Instr.</i>	
e.g. отѣцъ (at'ěts)	отцѣмъ (atsóm)	the father
нѣмецъ (ně'mits)	нѣмцемъ (ně'mtsim)	the German

i.e. цо should have been spelt нѣ.

*Accented:*    шо    жѣ    ор    жо    чѣ    ор    чо    цо    шѣ    ор    цо

*Unaccented:*    ме            же            че            це            ше

### (5) *The Liquids.*

л and р can be accompanied by any vowel.

The pronunciation of both лъ and љъ is quite different from that of the English *l*.

лъ\* is a guttural-sounded *l* produced by raising the back of the tongue and contracting the air-passage: the front part of the tongue is drawn back and rounded, whilst the lips are rounded. It may be imitated by pronouncing the English word *pull* deep in the throat.

љъ is a palatal almost like the French *l* in "vil."

ръ is trilled, more like the Scotch *r*, рљъ is palatal with a faint *yod*-sound. These sounds can only be acquired by ear.

With regard to the liquids л and р two special rules of formation should be noted:—

In roots of the type градъ, рѣрѣдъ (grat, góret) town, the Church Slavonic had the monosyllabic form,

---

\* In Polish written *l*.



Russian the dissyllabic; and as the Church language has greatly influenced Russian, the modern language has examples of both.

e.g. **злато, золото** (zlátə, zóltə) gold; **страна** (strəná) land; **сторона** (stərəná) side; **хранить** (khrańít') to preserve; **хоронить** (khərónít') to bury; **городъ** (górt) city; but **Петроградъ** (Pitrágrát) Petrograd; **берегъ** (b'érek) coast; but **прибрежье** (přibrěži) the foreshore; **молодъ** (mólod) young; **младше** (mládši) younger.

#### § 6. CONGLOMERATED CONSONANTS WHEN FINAL.

Russian dislikes a word ending in a conglomeration of consonants. Thus Egypt is **Египетъ** (Yegípit), where **еть** would in Old Russian have been written **ьтъ**. [v. § 2 (6).]

Similarly, in neuter and feminine nouns, where the genitive plural is the root, e.g. **дѣло, дѣлъ** (d'ě'lə, d'ě'ł'), **-еть**, deed, a vowel o, e or ě is sometimes inserted, especially when the last consonant is **л** or **р**.

e.g. **сестра, сѣстра** or **сестѣрѣ** (sistrá, syóstr or sistyór) sister; **игра** (igrá) game, adjective **игорный** (igórny); **свадьба** (svád'bə) wedding, **свадебъ** (svádip); **тѣтка** (tyótka) aunt, **тѣтокъ** (tyótək); **басня** (básnya) fable, **басень** (básin); **палка** (pá'łkə) stick, **палокъ** (pá'łək).

#### § 7. TRANSLITERATION INTO RUSSIAN.

The Russians, possessing their own special alphabet, have to transliterate foreign names and words. Within the limitations of their script they strive to be phonetic.

For *h* they use *г*.

e.g. **Гамбургъ** Hamburg.

For the English *th* they substitute *т*.

e.g. Smith **Смитъ**.

For German *eu, äu* they use *ей*.

e.g. **Лейхтенбергъ** Leuchtenberg.

For the French *u*, German *ü*, they use *ю*.

e.g. **Брюссель** Brüssel (Brussels).

For the French *eu*, German *ö*, they use and write *ё*.

e.g. **Гёте** Goethe.

For the rest they try to represent sounds accurately.

e.g. **джентльменъ** gentleman, **Брайтонъ** Brighton,

**комилъфо** comme il faut, **Поанкарé** Poincaré,

**Тудонъ** Toulon, **Жанъ** Jean, **Динанъ** Dinant,

**Лувенъ** Louvain, **Бржежанъ** Brzeźan.

All these foreign words, *if* they end in consonants or vowels that accord with Russian declensions, namely *ъ, ь, й, а, я, о* (neuter), *е* (neuter), are declined in the same way regularly.

e.g. **Бэкономъ** by Bacon, **въ Лúвенъ** in Louvain,

**въ Динáнъ** at Dinant (or Dinan). [v. § 23 (3).]

### § 8. RUSSIAN DIPHTHONGS.

Russian diphthongs are nearly all formed with *й*; and are **ай**, **яй**, sounded like *i* in "white," only broader; **ей** and **ѣй** like *ey* in "grey," but longer; **ой**, **ёй** almost as English "boy"; and **уй**, **юй** like *ui* in "bruid."

The digraph **ай** denotes a true diphthong only in foreign words.

e.g. **Брауншвейгъ** Браунъ Braunschweig (Brunswick) Brown.

In Russian words (when found) the *a* and the *y* are separate vowels.

e.g. **есаулъ** a Cossack captain. Cf. in French "caoutchouc."

§ 9. THE CHANGE OF *e* TO *ë*.

The reader will have observed there is no symbol for *yo*, and the diæresis over *e* is only used in elementary school-books.

The following rules will guide him in the pronunciation of *e* as *ye*, or *yo*.

The rule is that accented *e* preceding a hard consonant or *oxytone* is pronounced *ë*.

e.g. село (síló) village, plural сѣла, сѣль (sóľ, sól); пла́чь (pláčit) he weeps, but растѣть (rastyót) he grows; ружье (ružó) gun; смерть (smert') death; ё́лка (yóluskə), ё́лка (yol'kə) fir-tree; мертвѣй (myórtvy) dead; конемъ (kənyóm) by the horse; наше (náši) our (neut. nom. sing.); твое (tvayó) thy (neut. nom. sing.).

Exceptions:—

*e* accented before a hard syllable is *not* pronounced *ë*—

(1) In words ending in -ѣцъ, e.g. купѣцъ (kupéts) merchant. This is because *ц* was originally soft. [v. § 5 (4).]

(2) Before the adjectival terminations -скій and -ній, which are unaccented and were originally preceded by *ь*, softening the consonant.

e.g. жена́ (žiná) wife, plur. жены́ (žóny), adj. же́нский (žénski).

(3) In foreign words.

e.g. апте́ка	(apt'ékə)	apothecary's shop
биле́тъ	(bilét)	ticket
депе́ша	(d'epéšə)	despatch

(4) In words from Church Slavonic.

e.g. крестъ (křest) cross

нёбо (nébo) heaven, but нёбо palate of mouth

надѣжда (nad'ěždə) hope, but надѣжа (popularly)

And in some few other words, such as дѣрзкій bold, дѣрзость boldness, скѣрный nasty, учебный educational, левъ lion (but Лѣвъ the name Leo), предметъ subject.

*These words may also be taken as an exercise in the application of the rules regarding pronunciation.*

(5) In some words where e should be spelt ѣ, which never undergoes this change, cf. § 2 (3).

e.g. блескъ brightness, мелкій little, мелочь trifle, вредъ damage

(6) The preposition безъ without, which is generally proclitic.

e.g. безъ щитá (bišščítá) without a shield

(7) In the words верхъ above, цѣрковь church, пѣрвый first, четвѣргъ Thursday, чѣрпать to draw up, мѣркнуть to grow dusk, стѣрва carrion, серпъ sickle, верба willow, сѣрдце heart, исчѣзъ vanished, ужѣ already, вообще in general.

ě remains before a soft consonant:—

(1) In declensions and conjugations where other forms are hard and ě is regular.

e.g. несѣшь несѣтъ, несѣмъ, несѣте

thou carriest he, we, ye carry

утѣсь precipice, на утѣсѣ on the precipice

so берѣза birch-tree, въ берѣзѣ in the birch.

(2) In the instrumental singular of soft feminine nouns in *я*, like the hard nouns.

e.g. *грозѣю* (*грозѣ* threat)

*землѣю* (*землѣ* earth)

But *моѣю*, *твоѣю*, *своѣю*, with *е* not *ѣ*.

Also before the adjectival termination *-кій*. As explained in § 33 (8), this *-кій* is a grammarian's misrendering of the former form *-кой*, and, this *к* being only visually soft, there is no real exception to the rule. So, too, *щекѣ* cheek, *щёки* cheeks (because after gutturals *ы* is never used; v. § 5 (3)).

(3) In the following words *ѣ* becomes *ѣ̣*, like *е*, *ѣ̣* :—

<i>звѣзда́</i>	star	<i>звѣзды́</i> (plural)
<i>гнѣздо́</i>	nest	<i>гнѣзда́</i> (plural)
<i>приобрѣсти́</i>	to obtain	<i>приобрѣѣ́*</i> (past tense)
<i>цвѣсти́</i>	to bloom	<i>цвѣѣ́</i> (past tense)
<i>сѣдло́</i>	saddle	<i>сѣдла́</i> (plural)
<i>надѣвать</i>	to dress	<i>надѣѣѣѣ́</i> (past part. pass.)
		<i>позѣѣѣѣ́</i> to yawn
		<i>запечатѣѣѣ́</i> impressed
		<i>смѣѣѣ́</i> sally

*These words are merely misspelt.*

In two words *я* is sounded *ѣ̣* :—

*трясѣ́* he shook, sounded *трѣсѣ́*

*запряѣ́* he yoked (his horse), sounded *запрѣѣ́*

Lastly, *еѣ́*, the genitive of *онѣ́* she, is sometimes pronounced *еѣ́* like the accusative (which is *ее́*, sounded *ййѣ́*).

---

\* And other compounds of this verb.

## ACCIDENCE.

## § 10. THE PARTS OF SPEECH (ча́сти рѣчи).

The parts of speech in Russian are :—

<i>Declined</i>	{	(1) Nouns, <i>ѣмя существительное</i>
		(2) Adjectives, <i>ѣмя прилагательное</i>
		(3) Pronouns, <i>мѣстоимѣніе</i>
<i>Conjugated</i>	(4) Verbs, <i>глаголь</i>	
<i>Declined</i>	{	(5) Numerals, <i>ѣмя числительное</i>
		(6) Adverbs, <i>нарѣчіе</i>
		(7) Prepositions, <i>предлогъ</i>
		(8) Conjunctions, <i>союзъ</i>
		(9) Interjections, <i>междомѣтіе</i>

There is *no article*.

Occasionally *одинъ* (one) is used as an *indefinite article*.

There is *no special* form for adverbs formed from *adjectives*. The neuter singular is used, except in adjectives in *-скій*, where the form is *-ски*.

The verbs only have one regularly formed tense, namely the present ; and no other personal forms for past tenses, passives, moods, etc. These meanings are supplied by other simple modifications.

## THE NOUN (имя существительное).

## § 11. PRELIMINARY OBSERVATIONS.

The Russian noun has three genders, masculine, feminine, and neuter (роды мужескій, женскій, средній). But Russian presents no great difficulties in the ascertainment of gender, for—

(а) Nouns *proper or common* denoting males only, whatever the termination, are masculine (“natural” gender).

e.g. Ива́нъ John, Пётр Peter, Ива́нко John, воеводá general, сиротá orphan (masc. or fem.).

(б) Nouns denoting females always have a feminine termination (“natural” and “grammatical” gender coincide).

(γ) The inflections of the masculine and neuter are identical, save in the nominative, vocative, and accusative singular and plural; just as in Latin *bellum* only differs from *equus* in these cases.

(δ) Generally speaking, the termination fixes the gender, unlike French or German, where the beginner has no guide, and can only learn by rote.

(i) Thus, nouns ending in *ъ*, *ь* and *й* are masculine, *despite foreign etymology*.

e.g. столъ	table	писатьъ	writing
Царь	Tsar	университетъ	university
бáзисъ	basis	ко́нь	horse
кри́зисъ	crisis	сло́нь	elephant
	соловѣй		nightingale

(ii) Nouns ending in *о*, *е*, *ѣ* are neuter.

e.g. по́ле	field	со́лнце	sun
дѣ́ло	fact	бѣ́лье	washing

(iii) Words ending in а, я, ь are feminine, *despite foreign etymology*.

e.g. рука hand      пуля bullet  
драма drama (τὸ δράμα, le drame, das Drama,  
etc.)

With this apparent exception, *as in Latin and Greek*, that words in а and я of masculine signification are masculine, but declined like feminines. Unlike German or French, the gender primarily follows the meaning, not the termination.

e.g. мужчина man      слуга man-servant  
дядя uncle      Пётр Peter (short for Пётр)

юноша youth      убийца murderer (masc. or fem.)

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Terminations:	ъ	а	о
	ь	я	е
	й	ь	мя

## § 12. THE DECLENSIONS.

There are three declensions.

(1) Original *o*-stems: *masculines* in т, ь and й, *neuters* in о, ё, е.

(2) Original *a*-stems: *feminines* in а and я.

(3) Original *i*-stems:

(α) One masculine word, путь path.

(β) Many feminines, principally abstracts in -ость, e.g. скорость speed.

(γ) Two relics of older declensions:

мать, матери, cf. *mater, matris*, mother  
дочь, дочери daughter



(δ) Neuters in *мя, мени*.

e.g. *имя, имени* name, cf. Latin *nōmen, nōminis*; *сѣмя, сѣмени* seed, cf. Latin *sēmen, sēminis* [v. § 2 (2)]

In Old Slavonic there was, as in Latin, an *u* declension (e.g. *manus, manūs*). This has disappeared, but has left traces in the irregular genitives and locatives in *y* of the first (Russian) declension: also in the masculine genitive plural termination *-овъ*.

## § 13. THE CASES.

There are seven cases.

- |   |  |   |
|---|--|---|
| 1 | (1) Nominative, Именительный падежъ              |   |
| 5 | (2) Vocative, Звательный                         | „ |
| 4 | (3) Accusative, Винительный                      | „ |
| 2 | (4) Genitive, Родительный                        | „ |
| 3 | (5) Dative, Дательный                            | „ |
|   | (6) Instrumental, Творительный                   | „ |
|   | (7) Locative or Prepositional, Предложный падежъ |   |

This list looks formidable, but, as with Apollyon's lion in "The Pilgrim's Progress," apprehensions vanish on a close approach.

The vocative only subsists in a few Church words, e.g. *Боже* from *Богъ* God, *Христѣ* from *Христѡсъ* Christ, *Господи* from *Господъ* Lord, *Исусѣ* from *Исусъ* Jesus, *отче* from *отецъ* father. [v. § 69, II.]

The objective is identical with the nominative in all nouns denoting inanimate, but with the genitive in all nouns denoting animate objects. This rule has one exception—for the one instance where the accusative has an independent form, namely, the accusative singular of nouns in *a* and *я*.

e.g. *Я видѣлъ Царя* (genitive) *и Царѣцу*.

I saw the Tsar and the Tsaritsa.

*Учитель прочелъ ваше сочинѣние*.

The teacher read your work,

The original Slav accusative has vanished (except in the singular of nouns in а and я), and has been replaced by the nominative or genitive forms.

In all negative sentences the object is in the genitive, whatever the noun, and without exception.

e.g. Я не окончилъ своей работы.

I have not finished my work; the genitive being *partitive* in meaning "nothing of my work."

Я никогда не слыхалъ такихъ сказокъ.

I never heard such stories.

The instrumental case marks the agent by whom, and the locative or prepositional is used to denote the place in which; in modern Russian *it cannot be used by itself*, but only with certain prepositions, hence it is often called the "prepositional."

e.g. Въ селѣ (fsilé) in the village.

Я говорилъ о Николаѣ (ya gŏvŏrĭł anikŏláyе).

I was talking of Nicholas.

Thus, virtually, there are only five separate forms for the cases—nominative, genitive, dative, instrumental, and locative.

#### § 14. THE NUMBERS.

There are two numbers, singular and plural (единственное число, множественное число). The forms are almost identical for masculine nouns in ъ, ь, ѣ, and feminines in а, я; neuters in о, е, ѣ only differ in forming the nominative and accusative plural in а, я, as in Latin.

In ancient Russian there was a dual, but this is obsolete. Some few forms of it survive as irregularities. [v. § 24 (3).]

The plural of nouns in я, of the third declension, is slightly different.

## § 15. HARD AND SOFT NOUNS.

All nouns of the first and second declensions are "hard" or "soft" throughout: i.e. there is a double scheme of declension in "hard" or "soft" vowels, according as the root is hard or soft.

Those who have learnt the rules in § 3 and § 5 will find no difficulty in grasping this fundamental difference, which underlies all Russian inflections.

Nouns of the ■ declension, the third, are naturally all "soft."

## SCHEME OF DECLENSIONS.

	First Declension.				Second Declension.		Third Declension.	
	Masculine. Hard. Soft.		Neuter. Hard. Soft.		Feminine. Hard. Soft.		Fem.	Neut.
<i>Sing.</i>								
Nom.	ъ	ь й	о	е ё	а	я	ь	мя
Acc.	Like N. or G.		о	е ё	у	ю	ь	мя
Gen.	а [у]	я [ю]	а	я	ы	и	и	мѣнн
Dat.	у	ю	у	ю	ѣ	ѣ	и	мѣнн
Instr.	омъ	емъ	омъ	емъ	ою	ею	ію	мѣнемъ
Loc.	ѣ [у]	ѣ [ю]	ѣ	ѣ	ѣ	ѣ	и	мѣни
<i>Plur.</i>								
Nom.	ы	и	а	я	ы	и	и	мѣна
Acc.	Like N. or G.		а	я	Like N. or G.		и	мѣна
Gen.	овъ ей	евъ ей	ъ	ей	ъ	ь ей	ей	мѣнъ
Dat.	амъ	ямъ	амъ	ямъ	амъ	ямъ	ямъ	мѣнамъ
Instr.	ами	ями	ами	ями	ами	ями	ьми	мѣнами
Loc.	ахъ	яхъ	ахъ	яхъ	ахъ	яхъ	яхъ	мѣнахъ

It will be observed that in the plurals there is scarcely any divergence.

§ 16. EXAMPLES OF MASCULINE NOUNS IN THE  
FIRST DECLENSION (первое склонение).

*Singular.*

	tooth	work	cry
N. V.	зубъ	трудъ	крикъ
Acc.	зубъ	трудъ	крикъ
Gen.	зуба	трудá	крѣ́ка
Dat.	зубу	труду́	крѣ́ку
Instr.	зубомъ	трудомъ	крѣ́комъ
Loc.	зубѣ	трудѣ	крѣ́кѣ

*Plural.*

N. V.	зубы	труды́	крѣ́ки
Acc.	зубы	труды́	крѣ́ки
Gen.	зубо́въ	трудо́въ	крѣ́ковъ
Dat.	зуба́мъ	труда́мъ	крѣ́камъ
Instr.	зуба́ми	туда́ми	крѣ́ками
Loc.	зуба́хъ	туда́хъ	крѣ́кахъ

*Singular.*

	key	a German	march
N. V.	ключъ	нѣ́мецъ	маршъ
Acc.	ключъ	нѣ́мца	маршъ
Gen.	ключа́	нѣ́мца	ма́рша
Dat.	ключу́	нѣ́мцу	ма́ршу
Instr.	ключомъ	нѣ́мцемъ	ма́ршемъ
Loc.	ключѣ	нѣ́мцѣ	ма́ршѣ

*Plural.*

N. V.	ключи́	нѣ́мцы	ма́рши
Acc.	ключи́	нѣ́мцевъ	ма́рши
Gen.	ключе́й	нѣ́мцевъ	ма́ршей
Dat.	ключа́мъ	нѣ́мцамъ	ма́ршамъ
Instr.	ключа́ми	нѣ́мцами	ма́ршами
Loc.	ключа́хъ	нѣ́мцахъ	ма́ршахъ

These six examples illustrate regular forms in "hard" consonants. *Please observe the variations necessary after gutturals and palatals, and re-read § 5 (3) and (4). The rules in § 5 apply to all declensions and conjugations.* Thus *ключамъ* is sounded *klučám*, *марши* *máršy*, etc.

*Examples of Weak Stems.*

<i>Singular.</i>				
	hero	horse	battle	knife (ж originally soft)
N. V.	герóй	конь	бой	ножъ
Acc.	герóя	коня́	бой	ножъ
Gen.	герóя	коня́	бóя	ножа́
Dat.	герóю	коню́	бóю	ножу́
Instr.	герóемъ	конёмъ	бóемъ	ножомъ
Loc.	герóѣ	конѣ́	бóѣ	ножѣ́
<i>Plural.</i>				
N. V.	герóи	кóни	бои́	ножи́
Acc.	герóевъ	коней́	бои́	ножи́
Gen.	герóевъ	коней́	боёвъ	ножéй
Dat.	герóямъ	коня́мъ	бои́мъ	ножа́мъ
Instr.	герóями	коня́ми	бои́ми	ножа́ми
Loc.	герóяхъ	коня́хъ	бои́хъ	ножа́хъ

These examples should be learnt by heart; they are explained, and rules stated, in § 5 (3) and (4).

§ 17. EXAMPLES OF NEUTER NOUNS OF FIRST  
DECLENSION.

*Hard Stems.*

<i>Singular.</i>			
	yoke	village	quality
N. V. A.	ѣго	селó	ка́чество
Gen.	ѣга	селá	ка́чества
Dat.	ѣгу	селу́	ка́честву
Instr.	ѣгомъ	селóмъ	ка́чествомъ
Loc.	ѣгѣ	селѣ́	ка́чествѣ́

	<i>Plural.</i>		
N. V. A.	и́га	сѣ́ла	ка́чества
Gen.	и́гъ	сѣ́лъ	ка́чествъ
Dat.	и́гамъ	сѣ́ламъ	ка́чествамъ
Instr.	и́гами	сѣ́лами	ка́чествами
Loc.	и́гахъ	сѣ́лахъ	ка́чествахъ

*Soft and Sibilant Stems.*

	<i>Singular.</i>	
	sea	school
N. V. A.	мо́ре	учи́лище
Gen.	мо́ря	учи́лища
Dat.	мо́рю	учи́лищу
Instr.	мо́ремъ	учи́лищемъ
Loc.	мо́рѣ	учи́лищѣ
	<i>Plural.</i>	
N. V. A.	мо́ря	учи́лища
Gen.	мо́рей	учи́лищъ
Dat.	мо́рямъ	учи́лищамъ
Instr.	мо́рями	учи́лищами
Loc.	мо́ряхъ	учи́лищахъ
	<i>Singular.</i>	
	gun	knowledge
N. V. A.	ру́жьѣ	зна́нiе
Gen.	ру́жьѣ	зна́нiя
Dat.	ру́жьѣ	зна́нiю
Instr.	ру́жьѣмъ	зна́нiемъ
Loc.	ру́жьѣ	зна́нiи
	<i>Plural.</i>	
N. V. A.	ру́жья	зна́нiя
Gen.	ру́жей	зна́нiй
Dat.	ру́жьямъ	зна́нiямъ
Instr.	ру́жьями	зна́нiями
Loc.	ру́жьяхъ	зна́нiяхъ

These examples should be learnt by heart; a discussion of them will be found in § 27.

§ 18. EXAMPLES OF THE SECOND DECLENSION (второе склонение) IN **а** AND **я**.

The scheme for these nouns is:—

	<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
N. V.	а	я	ы	я
Acc.	у	ю	Like N. or G. [v. § 13]	
Gen.	ы	я	ъ	ь
Dat.	ѣ	ѣ	амъ	ямъ
Instr.	ою ой* ею ей*		ами	ями
Loc.	ѣ	ѣ	ахъ	яхъ

Examples:—

	Hard.	<i>Singular.</i> Hard.	Soft.	Sibilant:
	widow	hand	bullet	soul
N. V.	вдовá	руká	пýля	душá
Acc.	вдовý	руку	пýлю	душy
Gen.	вдовы	рукí	пýли	душí
Instr.	вдово́ю	руко́ю	пýлею	душо́ю
D. L.	вдовѣ	рукѣ	пýлѣ	душѣ
		<i>Plural.</i>		
N. V.	вдовы	ру́ки	пýли	души
Acc.	вдовъ	ру́ки	пýли	душъ
Gen.	вдовъ	рукъ	пýль	душъ
Instr.	вдова́ми	рука́ми	пýлями	душáми
Dat.	вдова́мъ	рука́мъ	пýлямъ	душáмъ
Loc.	вдова́хъ	рука́хъ	пýляхъ	душáхъ
		<i>Singular.</i> Hard.	Fricative.	Fricative.
	Sibilant. candle	tear	empress	food
N. V.	свѣ́чá	слезá	царíца	пíща
Acc.	свѣ́чý	слезý	царíцу	пíщу
Gen.	свѣ́чи	слезы	царíцы	пíщи
Instr.	{свѣ́чю}	слезо́ю	царíцею	пíщею
	{свѣ́чою}			
D. L.	свѣ́чѣ	слезѣ	царíцѣ	пíщѣ

\* Contracted form.

*Plural.*

N. V.	свѣчи	слёзы	царіцы
Acc.	свѣчи	слёзы	царіцѣ
Gen.	свѣчѣ	слёзѣ	царіцѣ
Instr.	свѣчами	слезами	царіцями
Dat.	свѣчамъ	слезамъ	царіцямъ
Loc.	свѣчахъ	слезахъ	царіцахъ

*For pronunciation consult §§ 2 (2), 5 (3), 5 (4).*

*Soft and Vocalic Stems.**Singular.*

	earth	lightning	family
N. V.	землі	молніи	семья
Acc.	зѣмлю	молнію	семью
Gen.	землі	молніи	семьи
Instr.	землёю	молнією	семьёю
D. L.	землѣ	молніи	семьѣ

*Plural.*

N. V.	зѣмли	молніи	сѣмьи
Acc.	зѣмли	молніи	сѣмей
Gen.	земель	молній	сѣмей
Instr.	землями	молніями	сѣмьями
Dat.	землямъ	молніямъ	сѣмьямъ
Loc.	земляхъ	молніяхъ	сѣмьяхъ

*Examples of Masc. in а, я.**Singular.*

	Hard.	Soft.
N. V.	ста́роста elder	дѣ́дя uncle
Acc.	ста́ро́сту	дѣ́дю
Gen.	ста́ро́сты	дѣ́ди
Instr.	ста́ро́стою	дѣ́дею
D. L.	ста́ро́стѣ	дѣ́дѣ



	<i>Plural.</i>	
N. V.	ста́росты	дѣди
Acc.	ста́рость	дѣдей
Gen.	ста́рость	дѣдей
Instr.	ста́ростами	дѣдями
Dat.	ста́ростамъ	дѣдямъ
Loc.	ста́ростахъ	дѣдяхъ

These examples should be learnt by heart. Consult § 2 (5), § 9, and § 11.

§ 19. THIRD DECLENSION (трѣтье склонѣнiе):  
NOUNS IN *и* and *мя*.

These nouns are always soft; most of the terminations are in *и*.\*

MASCULINE.

Only one example survives:—

	<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>
N. V. A.	пу́ть path	N. V. A.	пути́
G. D. L.	пути́	Gen.	путѣй
Instr.	путѣмъ	Dat.	путѣмъ
		Instr.	путѣми
		Loc.	путѣхъ

Formerly there were others of this type; e.g. *день* day, now a soft masc. of the first declension. But “after midday” is “*послѣднiй*” (*pəslédnǐi*); *днiи* being the old genitive.

§ 20. THIRD DECLENSION IN *и*: FEMININES.

These are numerous and important. In form they are liable to confusion with soft masculines like *конь* horse.

---

\* Just like the Latin *turris*; with which type they correspond philologically.

E.g.	<i>Singular.</i>		
	bone	horse	door
{ N. V.	кость	лошадь	дверь
{ Acc.	кость	лошадь	Declined like кость
{ Gen.	кости	лошади	
{ Dat.	кости	лошади	
{ Loc.	кости	лошади	
Instr.	костью } костію }	лошадью } лошадію }	

	<i>Plural.</i>		
N. V.	кости	лошади	Declined like кость
Acc.	кости	лошадей	
Gen.	костей	лошадей	
Dat.	костѣмъ	лошадѣмъ	
Instr.	костями	лошадями	
Loc.	костѣхъ	лошадѣхъ	

	<i>Singular.</i>	
	fortress	care
{ N. V.	крѣпость	осторожность
{ Acc.	крѣпость	осторожность
{ Gen.	крѣпости	осторожности
{ Dat.	крѣпости	осторожности
{ Loc.	крѣпости	осторожности
Instr.	крѣпостью	осторожностью

	<i>Plural.</i>	
N. V.	крѣпости	—
Acc.	крѣпости	—
Gen.	крѣпостей	—
Dat.	крѣпостѣмъ	—
Instr.	крѣпостями	—
Loc.	крѣпостѣхъ	—

Observe звѣрь wild beast, which is now masculine has звѣрьми instr. plural, besides звѣрями.

## § 21. THIRD DECLENSION IN Я: NEUTERS IN МЯ.

Consult § 2 (2).

Those who know Latin grammar have learnt the forms like *nōmen*, *nōminis*, *sēmen*, *sēminis*.

The Russian words of this type are very similar. E.g.

<i>Sing.</i>	name	flame	tribe	seed
Nom. Voc. Acc.	и́мя	плáмя	плéмя	сѣмя*
Gen. Dat. Loc.	и́мени			
Instr.	и́менемъ			
<i>Plur.</i>				
Nom. Voc. Acc.	именá	Like и́мя	Like и́мя	Like и́мя, but gen. plural сѣи́нъ
Gen.	имёнъ			
Dat.	именáмъ			
Instr.	именáми			
Loc.	именáхъ			

## § 22. THIRD DECLENSION: REMAINS OF OLDER FORMS.

(1) *Feminine*: There are only two.

	<i>Singular.</i>	
	mother	daughter
Nom. Voc.	мáть	дóчь
A. G. D. L.	мáтери	дóчери
Instr.	мáтерью	дóчерью
	<i>Plural.</i>	
Nom. Voc.	мáтери	дóчери
Acc. Gen.	матерéй	дочерéй
Dat.	матеря́мъ	дочеря́мъ
Instr.	{ матеря́ми	{ дочеря́ми
	{ матерьми́	{ дочерьми́
Loc.	матеря́хъ	дочеря́хъ

Cf. *māter*, *mātris*; μήτηρ, μητρός; θυγάτηρ, θυγατρός.

\* Cf. Latin *sēmen*.

(2) *Neuter*: There is only one, and this noun is irregular.

	<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>
	child		children
Nom. Voc. Acc.	дитя́	Nom. Voc.	дѣти
Gen. Dat. Loc.	дитя́ти	Acc. Gen.	дѣтѣй
Instr.	дитя́тею	Dat.	дѣтямъ
		Inst.	дѣтьми (and дѣтями)
		Loc.	дѣтяхъ

§ 23. (1) The foregoing sections, 16 to 22, illustrate the rules of Russian declension.

Some space must still be devoted to *apparent* exceptions (for euphonic reasons), to *true* exceptions (which are very few), and the principles of the accentuation in each class.

It is assumed that the reader has mastered §§ 2-6 and § 9, which supply the phonetic basis, the fundamental laws of Russian orthography.

(2) Some nouns are used only in the plural. These are masculine, feminine or neuter, according as their genitive assigns them to one or other of the declensions.

e.g. но́жницы, но́жницъ, etc., fem., scissors  
щипцы́, щипцо́въ, etc., masc., pincers  
воро́та, воро́тъ, etc., neut., gates

(3) Some nouns are indeclinable; namely, those which do *not* end in *ъ, ь, й, а, я* (m. and f.), and *о, е* (neut.). Such are (i) a few Russian words, e.g. ко́фе coffee. (ii) Many foreign words, especially proper names; e.g. Са́рти Sarti, Пе́трүччо Petruccio, Лу́бэ Loubet, Ма́ртелло Martello. The case in which these nouns stand must be understood from the context; e.g. въ поэ́зія Лу́бэе́лло in

Longfellow's poetry, во время президентства Карно́ in the Presidency of Carnot. On the other hand, names like Рена́нъ Renan, Дина́нъ Dinant, Аахенъ Aix-la-Chapelle, Шопе́нъ Chopin, are declined like ordinary nouns. [v. § 7.] E.g. Рѣчь сэра Эдуарда Гре́я, the speech of Sir Edward Grey (Грей).

#### § 24. REMARKS ON THE MASCULINE NOUNS OF THE FIRST DECLENSION.

(1) In old Slavonic, as in Latin, there used to be a declension in "u," e.g. *mānus, manūs*; e.g. in Russian сынъ son (Gothic *sunus*). This declension has completely vanished, but has left traces in the following irregularities:—

(a) Some nouns, denoting materials, have mostly *unaccented* genitive in -у, -ю.

e.g. ча́ю from ча́й tea  
 са́хару from са́харъ sugar  
 наро́ду from наро́дъ people

e.g. ча́шка ча́ю a cup of tea, but э́тотъ родъ са́хара this sort of sugar.

e.g. мно́го наро́ду many people, ха́ра́ктеръ а́нглий-скаго наро́да the character of the English people.

Also in the phrases:—

съ ве́рху from on high  
 съ ни́зу from beneath  
 безъ то́лку senseless  
 изъ ви́ду out of sight

and a few others.

(β) Some *monosyllables* have a locative in -у, -ю *accented*, used with *въ* in, на on.

e.g. *въ лѣсу* in the forest, but *при лѣсѣ* at the wood  
*въ годѹ* in the year  
*въ бою* in the fight  
*въ краю* on the edge  
*на льдѹ* on the ice  
*въ снѣгѹ* in the snow  
*въ раю* in Paradise  
*на берегѹ* on the shore [v. § 5 (5).]

(γ) *сынѣ* son, *кумѣ* godfather, and others, insert the syllable -ов- into the plural.

e.g. [*сыны* sons (poetical)] *сыновѣ*  
*кумѣ* godfather *кумовѣ*  
*зять* son-in-law *зятевѣ*  
*сватѣ* marriage-broker *сватовѣ*

(δ) It is in the nouns in “u” that the genitive plural -овѣ originated; it has spread to nearly all masculine stems.

(2) Some nouns form their plural in -и; this is really an old feminine collective form.

e.g. *братѣ* brother, *братья* (gen. *братьевѣ*, dat. *братьямѣ*, instr. *братьями*, loc. *братяхѣ*)  
*камень* stone, *каменѣ* stones, *камини* single stones  
*бросать каминами*, not *каменьями*, to stone a man  
*стулъ* a chair, *стулья*  
*сукъ* a bough, *сучья* [v. § 5 (3).]  
*уголь* coal, *уголья*

зубъ tooth, зубья teeth (of a machine), зубы teeth (of a man)

листъ leaf, листья leaves of a tree, листы (leaves of paper)

другъ friend, друзья (gen. друзей)

князь prince, князья (gen. князей)

мужъ husband, мужья (gen. мужей)

зять son-in-law, зятья (gen. зятей), also зятевыя

деверь the husband's brother, деверья (gen. деверей)

(3) Some masculine nouns form their plural in -а.

e.g. рукавъ	sleeve	рукава
берегъ	shore	берега
глазъ	eye	глаза
пóлогъ	bed-canopy	пологи
рогъ	horn	рога
колоколъ	bell	колокола

It will be observed most of these are essentially *duals* in meaning; *this á is the old dual, Nom. and Acc.* Cf. § 26 (5) (8).

This á ending has been extended to a few nouns—

e.g. городъ	town	города
лѣсъ	wood	лѣса
голосъ	voice	голоса
домъ	house	дома

as well as most loan-words in -еръ and -оръ—

e.g. докторъ	doctor	доктора
профессоръ	professor	профессора
кучеръ	coachman	кучера
but актёръ	actor (French <i>acteur</i> )	актёры
императоръ	Emperor	императоры

Other instances are:—

образъ shapes	образы shapes	образа́ images
хлѣбъ bread	хлѣбы loaves	хлѣба́ corn
цвѣтъ colour	цвѣты flowers	цвѣта́ colours
мѣхъ bellows	мѣхи	
мѣхъ fur	мѣха́	
орденъ the order	ордена́ the orders (e.g. religious)	ордена́ the orders (decorations)

(4) The genitive plural of masculines in -ъ originally ended in -ъ, and was only accentually differentiated from the nominative. This genitive plural in -ъ still obtains in the neuters and feminines. [v. § 24 (1) (δ).]

Hence it is (v. paradigm § 15) that masculines ending in a weak consonant form the genitive plural in -ей; e.g. царь, царя́, царьѣ, which became царьѣи, and was pronounced and spelled царей in Russian, after ѣ and ѣ had become mute.

So, too, words in -жь, -ѣ, -шь (e.g. ножъ knife, ножа́, ноже́и), because [v. § 5 (4)] ж and ш, and ч and щ were all originally soft.

But ѣ is regarded as a consonantal ending, and takes -евъ; e.g. строй construction, строевъ.

Some masculine nouns still have a genitive plural in -ъ,

e.g.			Gen. plur.
во́лосъ	hair		волосѣ
разъ	time (so many times)		разѣ
сапо́гъ	boot		сапо́гѣ
драгу́нъ	dragoon		драгу́нѣ
ту́рокъ	Turk		ту́рокѣ
гренаде́ръ	grenadier		гренаде́ръ
глазъ	eye		глазѣ
ре́крутъ	recruit		ре́крутъ



as well as all those which form their nominative singular in *-инъ*, and are thus distinguished by diversifying the nominative.

Lastly, masculine nouns of measurement—

e.g. *фунтъ* a pound (= 90 lb. avoirdupois)

*сажень* a lineal measure (= 7 feet)

make their genitive plural thus: *фунтъ*, *сажень*.

(5) Nom. sing. in *-инъ*.

Many words, especially words descriptive of race, creed, etc., have a *singular* with the adjectival form *-инъ* [v. § 34 (2)], but drop the *-инъ* in the plural, forming the nom. plural in *-е* or *-а*. E.g.

	Roman	Christian	Englishman
Nom. sing.	Рѣмлянинъ	христiанинъ	Англичанинъ
Gen. sing.	Рѣмлянина	христiанина	Англичанина
Nom. plur.	Рѣмляне	христiане	Англичане
Gen. plur.	Рѣмлянъ	христiанъ	Англичанъ

	Tatar	master	wife's brother
Nom. sing.	татаринъ	баринъ	шуринъ
Gen. sing.	татари́на	ба́рина	шу́рина
Nom. plur.	{ татары }	ба́ре	шу́рья
Gen. plur.	татаръ	баръ	шурьёвъ

*хозяинъ* (master of the house) is not quite regular. In the *singular*, *хозяинъ*, *хозяина*, etc.

*Plural* Nom. Voc.           хозяева [cf. § 24 (1) (γ)]

„ Acc. Gen.           хозяевъ

„ Dat. Instr. Loc.   хозяев-, амъ, ами, ахъ

In this connection [v. § 34 (2)] the possessive adjectives in *-инъ* used as *proper names* are declined as stated in that section, and not like the above.

## (6) Irregular formations.

*Singular.*

	Christ	The Lord
Nom.	Христѡсъ	Господѣ (Насрѡд')
Voc.	Христѣ	Господи
Gen.	Христѣа	Господа
Dat.	Христѹ	Господу
Instr.	Христѡмъ	Господомъ
Loc.	Христѣ	Господѣ

## neighbour

## devil

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
Nom. Voc.	сосѣдъ	сосѣди	чортъ*	чѣрти
Acc.	сосѣда	сосѣдей	чорта	чертѣй
Gen.	etc.	Like нарѣ, soft stem.	чорта	Like нарѣ, soft stem.
Dat.			чорту	
Instr.			чортѡмъ	
Loc.			чортѣ	

человѣкъ, man (in general: мужъ husband, мужнина male), generally forms its plural in люди (declined like a plural of an и stem).

When the plural is used, the genitive plural is человекъ, e.g. двѣдцать человекъ twenty men.

## § 25. ACCENTUATION OF THE MASCULINE NOUNS OF THE FIRST DECLENSION.

Most masculine nouns retain the accent of the nominative; but, as the original nominative termination ѣ has become mute, and cannot be accented, some nouns seem to throw the accent forward on to the other terminations.

\* Not to be confused with черта (fem.) feature.

E.g. **человѣкъ** man, **сарай** barn, **братъ** brother, retain the accent on the syllable accented in the nominative, i.e. on the stem; e.g. **человѣкомъ**, **сарая**, **брата**.

No general rule can explain the variance of the accent; the following principles may be a guide.

I. The following derivatives were originally accented on the termination **ъ**, and therefore throw the accent forward on to the other terminations:—

- (1) All names in **-инъ**, e.g. **Карамзинъ** Karamzin.
- (2) All words in **-ецъ**, e.g. **купецъ** merchant.
- (3) All derivatives in **-акъ**,\* **-икъ**, **-лкъ**, **-окъ**, **-ѣжъ**, **-ачъ**; e.g. **дуракъ** fool, **старикъ** old man, **падѣжъ** case, **палачъ** executioner, **кусокъ** morsel, **скрипачъ** fiddler, **тюфякъ** mattress.
- (4) All derivatives in **-унъ**, **-аръ** (except **государь** Lord, as a royal title, **государа**), **-иръ**, **-ыръ**, and the months in **-брь**; e.g. **девятого октября** on the 9th October, **табунъ** herd of horses, **столяръ** carpenter, **пузырь** bellows; but **панцырь** (**панцыря**) cuirass.
- (5) A very large number of words, such as **столъ** table, **быкъ** ox, **женихъ** bridegroom, **плодъ** fruit, **полкъ** regiment, **языкъ** tongue, **пѣтухъ** cock. Nothing but reading and practice can determine which these are.

II. Secondly, many words retain the accent as in the nominative in the singular, but throw it forward in the plural; e.g. **садъ** garden, **чинъ** rank, **шагъ** step.

---

\* Cf. the Greek accent *akós, ikós*,

III. Thirdly, some words throw the accent forward off to the termination in the genitive plural and following cases.

e.g. богъ	god	богѡвъ
воръ	thief	ворѡмъ
гвоздь	nail	гвоздѣмъ
крѹгъ	circle	крѹгѡмъ
лѣбедь	swan	о лѣбедѣхъ

In all cases the original accent on the nominative must be learnt from the dictionary or a teacher; *as a general rule, a masculine noun that throws its accent forward on the genitive singular throws it forward on to all the terminations; and a noun not accented on the last syllable retains the same accent throughout.*

This section must be read subject to all the rules stated in § 24 and § 9.

#### § 26. REMARKS ON THE NEUTER NOUNS OF THE FIRST DECLENSION.

Except, in so far as the masculine nouns have more inflections, the special remarks in § 24 apply to neuters as well.

(1) In § 24 (4) it was observed that all masculine nouns of the first declension ending in a consonant + ь or -жъ, -шъ, -щъ, -чъ (which were all originally soft, v. § 5 (4)), form the genitive plural in -ѣй. The same applies to all soft neuter nouns in -е, and the same arguments hold good.

e.g. поле field полѣй

But, with this difference, neuters in -цѡ, -нѣ, -шѡ, -ше, -шѡ, -ше, -чѡ, -че, form the genitive plural in ѣ.

e.g. плечѡ shoulder плечѣ [v. also § 26 (5) (β).]

жилище home жилищѣ

лицѡ face лицѣ

Nouns in -ѣ form the genitive plural in -ей, the reason being that the ѣ is inserted to divide the syllables, so that such words come under the general rule of neuters ending in ѣ.

e.g. ружьѣ gun ружей  
питьѣ drink питей

(2) Neuters in -іе, and feminines in -ія (these terminations being unaccented) spell the ѣ terminations as they are sounded, viz. и.

e.g. пониманіе the understanding

Лос. о пониманіи

These nouns in -іе are very common, being the regular verbal nouns formed from the infinitives to express the abstract idea of the verb.

e.g. выразить to express, выраженіе the expressing

имѣть to own, имѣніе the estate

The *genitive plural* in nouns in -іе and -ія is -іи.

e.g. Я не хочу егѡ имѣній

Ya ne khačú yivó iměni

I do not desire his property

In poetry and colloquial speech such nouns are contracted, e.g. желанье for желаніе.

Some such nouns form a genitive plural in *ьствъ*, e.g. *платье* clothing, *платьевъ*; *кушанье* food, *кушаньевъ*; but these are exceptions, for such nouns are in reality paroxytone collectives, the old collective termination being *-ѣ*, plural *-ѣя*.

These nouns are *only* found in the contracted form, and may be compared with the plurals *друзья*, *братья* [v. § 24 (2)].

(3) *Mixed masculine and neuter declension.*

*Augmentative* nouns in *-ище*, e.g. *село* village, *селище* a big village, form their plural like that of the soft masculine nouns, e.g. *конь*. Thus *селища*, *селищей*, etc. But *кладбище*, cemetery, is regular; the augmentative sense has disappeared.

So, too, *diminutives* in *-ко*.

e.g. *словечко* a little word

Pl. Nom. Voc. Acc. *словечки*

Gen. *словечекъ* [v. § 6.]

Observe, too, *очко*, *очки* (little eyes), now spectacles; *очкивъ*, and so on.

Some other miscellaneous examples are:—

<i>солнце</i> sun	<i>солнца</i> and <i>-ы</i>	<i>солнцевъ</i>
<i>дно</i> bottom	<i>дны</i>	<i>донъ</i>
<i>яблоко</i> apple	<i>яблоки</i>	<i>яблокъ</i> or <i>яблоковъ</i>

(4) *Plurals in -ья* [v. § 24 (2)].

Neuter words capable of a collective meaning have a collective plural like the masculine nouns.

e.g. <i>дерево</i>	tree	<i>деревья</i>
<i>перо</i>	feather	<i>перья</i>
<i>крыло</i>	wing	<i>крыла</i> and <i>крылья</i>

*Observe.*—**колѣно**, knee, has three meanings and three plurals: (1) **колѣна́** family or race; (2) **колѣни**, **колѣне́й** knees; (3) **колѣ́нья**, **колѣ́ньевъ** knots on wood.

(5) *Irregular forms.*

These may conveniently be considered under two heads: (a) obsolete declensions, of which a few relics subsist; (b) dual forms.

(a) *Obsolete forms.*

**Небо́** heaven, **чудо́** miracle, **сло́во** word, **тѣло́** body, **ко́ло** wheel, formerly belonged to the same declension as the Latin *genus, generis*, Greek *νέφος, νέφους (νέφεος)*. Hence the adjectival forms are: **словесный** literary, **небесный** heavenly, **чудесный** wonderful, **тѣлесный** corporeal, and **колесный** pertaining to a wheel.

Of all these forms only two survive in regular use: **чудо́**, **чудеса́**, **чуде́сь** [not **чуде́сь**, cf. § 9, exception (4)]; and **небо́**, **небеса́**, **небе́сь** [not **небе́сь**].

The modern Russian for wheel is **колесо́**, plural **колёса**.

**Сло́во** and **тѣло́** are regular like **дѣло́**.

In words denoting the young of animals a plural **-ята́** is still used, the singular being **-ёнокъ**.

e.g. <b>котёнокъ</b>	kitten	<b>котята́, котятъ</b>
<b>жеребёнокъ</b>	colt	<b>жеребята́, жеребятъ</b>
<b>волчёнокъ</b>	wolf-cub	<b>волчата́, волчатъ</b>

[v. § 5 (3).]

So, too, **цыпля́та** chickens, **ребя́та** children (in lofty language, used as the plural of **ребёнокъ**), etc., and also **внукъ** grandson, **внуча́та** great grand-children.

(8) *Dual forms.*

о́ко	eye (poetical only)	о́чи, о́чей
у́хо	ear	у́ши, у́шей
ко́лѣно	knee	ко́лѣни, ко́лѣней
сто	one hundred	двѣсти two hundred
плечó	shoulder	плѣчи, плечѹ

## § 27. ACCENTUATION OF THE NEUTER NOUNS OF THE FIRST DECLENSION.

*As in all cases the accent on the nominative must be ascertained from the dictionary or the teacher.*

*Dissyllabic words reverse the accent in the plural.*

e.g. тѣ́ло	body	тѣ́ла
мо́ре	sea	мо́ря
се́ло	village	се́ла [v. § 9.]
ребрѹ́	rib	ребра́
де́рево	tree	дерѣ́вья
пи́сьмо	letter	пи́сьма, пи́семъ
пра́во	right	права́
се́рдце	heart	серди́ца
Ехсепт блю́до	vessel	блю́да
го́рло	throat	го́рла

*Trisyllabic nouns, if oxytone, have the plural paroxytone; if the stem is accented, make the plural oxytone.*

e.g. колѣсо́	wheel	колѣ́са
полотни́о	cloth	полоти́на
зе́ркало	mirror	зеркала́, зе́ркаль or зерка́ль
кру́жево	lace	кружева́, кру́жевь
о́зеро	lake	озера́ or озе́ра



Derivative nouns in -ie, -ство, retain the same accent.

e.g. существó	being	существо́
знáние	knowledge	знáнiя
правительствó	administration	правительствá

## § 28. REMARKS ON THE SECOND DECLENSION.

### (1) Genitive plural in -ь and -ей.

Practically the same conditions obtain as with the neuters. [v. § 26 (1).]

Soft nouns in -я and -ча, -ша and -жа, regularly form the genitive plural in -ь and -чъ, and the instrumental singular in -ёю, -ею; -чою, -чею; -шою, -шею; -жою, -жею. [v. § 5 (4).] So, too, nouns in -ца preceded by a vowel: instrumental singular -цёю, -цею; genitive plural -цъ.

But nouns in -ча, -жа, -ша, when preceded by a consonant, form the genitive plural in -ей: and the same applies to nouns in -ща.

e.g. вѣкша	squirrel	вѣкшей
саранча́	grasshopper	саранчѣй
Similarly: дѣ́дя	uncle	дѣ́дей
нозд́ря	nostril	нозд́рей
до́ля	lot	до́ль and до́лей
за́ря	dawn*	за́рь and за́рей

Nouns in -ья also have a genitive plural in -ей *regularly*, when accented; -ий *unaccented*.

e.g. лгу́нья	liar	лгу́ний
статѣ́я	article	статѣ́й
гостѣ́я	guest (fem.)	гостѣ́й
свинѣ́я	pig	свинѣ́й

---

\* Also the evening half-light.

(2) In ordinary speech and in poetry the instrumental singular -ою, -ею is contracted to -оѣ and -еѣ, and often thus written.

(3) Many nouns in the second declension are masculine, *because of their meaning*, as in Latin *agricola*.

e.g. дѣдѣ uncle, юноша youth, Саша diminutive of Александръ, Колья diminutive of Николай, Петья diminutive of Пётръ, слуга servant (feminine form служанка), сирота orphan, masc. or fem. *according to meaning*, судья judge, бродяга vagabond.

(4) There are very many derivative nouns in -ія, amongst them the loan-words from the Latin *tio*, e.g. нація nation.

The rule regarding these is the same as with the derivative neuters in -іе [v. § 26 (2)], namely that the ѣ forms are written and sounded и.

e.g. армія army, въ арміи in the army, арміи genitive plural; so, too, Армѣнія Armenia, Англія England, Франція France, etc.

*Note.*—Марія, о Маріи; but Мάρья, о Мάρѣ, Mary.

## § 29. ACCENTUATION OF SECOND DECLENSION.

The rules for the accentuation of this declension are comparatively easy.

Only oxytone nouns, i.e. those accented on the final syllable, can shift the accent. All others retain the accent on the same syllable.

Of oxytone nouns only those which are dissyllabic can shift the accent.

Amongst these [v. § 5 (5)] must be included liquid stems, such as борода́ beard, голова́ head (contrast глава́ chapter).

Trisyllabic and polysyllabic nouns retain the same fixed accent.

For the *oxytone dissyllables* there are two sets of rules.

(a) The accent goes back on the root *only* in the nom. plur.

e.g. вдова́	widow	вдо́вы
волна́	wave	во́лны
игра́	game	и́гры
ре́ка	river	ре́ки
судя́	judge	су́ды
слуга́	servant	слу́ги
стрѣла́	arrow	стрѣ́лы
струна́	string	стру́ны
	(e.g. of violin)	
узда́	reins	у́зды

and a few others.

(β) The accent goes back to the stem in the acc. sing. as well.

e.g. рука́ hand ру́ку, ру́ки  
(Occasionally, by analogy, жена́мъ, жена́ми, жена́хъ;  
сёстра́мъ, зе́мля́мъ, звѣзда́мъ are mistakenly used.)

борода́	beard	бóроду, бóроды
вода́	water	во́ду, во́ды
нога́	foot	но́гу, но́ги

## § 30. REMARKS ON THE THIRD DECLENSION.

The original nouns belonging to this class are few in number, but very common in use. Some of them have both Slavonic and Russian forms [v. § 5 (5)].

e.g. *во́лость* an administrative district, *вла́сть* power.\*

The derivative nouns in *-ость* are innumerable, and abstract nouns are mostly created with this termination. All such derivative nouns accent the root-syllable. [v. § 98, V.]

e.g. *ста́ръ* old, *ста́рость* old age.

(1) There is a special accented locative ending in *и́*, used *only* after *на* and *въ* [cf. § 24 (1)].

e.g. *гру́дь* breast, *на груди́*; *вѣ́твь* twig, *на вѣтви́*;  
*сте́пь* steppe, *въ степи́*; *Русь* Russia (poetical,  
usual word *Росси́я*), *на Руси́*.

(2) *Цѣ́рковь* church, has in the dat., instr., and loc. plural a for *я*.

i.e. *церква́мъ*, *-а́ми*, *-а́хъ*

## § 31. ACCENTUATION OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

The accentuation follows the paradigms in § 20; but some reservations must be made.

(1) Many of these nouns accent the termination on the *dative*, *instrumental*, and *locative plural*.

e.g. *до́лжность* duty, *должно́стѣмъ*, *-ѣ́ми*, *-ѣ́хъ*

---

\* Such feminines in *-ость* and *-чь* correspond etymologically with the English forms "might," "draught," German "Wacht," etc.

(2) Amongst such nouns, the following have the accented locative singular [v. § 30].

бровь	brow	печь	oven	связь	connection
грудь	breast	рѣчь	speech	часть	part
кость	bone	степь	steppe	площадь	
честь	honour	тѣнь	shadow	public square	
ось	axle	цѣпь*	chain		

### § 32. THE "EUPHONIC" VOWELS o, e, ё.

In § 2 (7) and § 6 brief reference was made to the former vocalic values of *ѣ* and *ѥ*, as short *ö* and *ï*, and to the aversion of the Russian language from heavy combinations of final consonants, especially when there are liquids (such as *л*, *р* and *л*) in the conglomeration.

Under these two heads simple phonetic changes, *which are written*, occur in *all* the declensions, and these rules must be applied to all of the declensions.

I. *Extrusion of ѣ and ѥ when unaccented.* The ancient Russian for "day" was *дѣнь-ѥ'*. When *ѥ* became mute, being "open," the first vowel was transformed to *e*; hence the nominative *дѣнь*, genitive *днѣ*. Similarly *днѣ* bottom, gen. pl. *донѣ* (for *дѣнь-ѣ'*, *дѣнь*).

This law may be tabulated:—

*ѣ*, originally accented or in close syllables, becomes *o*; unaccented disappears.

*ѥ*, originally accented or in close syllables, becomes *e* or *ё*; unaccented disappears, or is retained in spelling to soften the consonant.

---

\* Not to be confused with *цѣпь* flail.

e.g. *лѡбъ* (formerly *лѡбъ'*) forehead, gen. *лѡ́а*;  
*ротъ* (formerly *рѡтъ'*) mouth, gen. *рѡ́а*; *левъ*  
 (formerly *лѡвъ'*) lion, gen. *лѡ́а*\*; *сотъ*, gen.  
 of *сто* (for *сѡто*), one hundred; *лѡдъ* ice  
 (*лѡдъ'*), gen. *лѡ́а*.\*

*Incidentally it may be stated here that the great complication in the accentuation of masculines arises from the loss of the final inflection of the nominative. Most Russian nouns retain the accent on the same syllable; but where the original inflection was formerly accented and has become mute (i.e. either ъ or ѣ), the accent had to be thrown back.*

*In the feminines and neuters the original inflection a, o, has been retained; hence the rules are much simpler.*

Similar instances are: *пѡсъ* dog, genitive *пѡ́а*;  
*мигъ*, but *мигѡвѣнiе*, both meaning moment,  
 the latter should have been spelt *мигѡвѣнiе*;  
*мигá* mist, for *мигѡ́а*; *возъ*, verbal prefix  
 meaning "up," but *взра́стáтъ* to grow up (for  
*възра́стáтъ*); *сонъ* sleep, *сна́*; *лѣнъ* linen, *лѣнá*,  
 etc.

As a contrast: Russian, *мѡдъ*, *мѡ́а* mead (the drink), Old Russian, *медъ*, *мѡ́а*; i.e. the original accent was on the stem.

Some other instances may illustrate the same point. All derivatives in *ѣѡъ* (formerly *ѣѡъ'*) were once oxytone, i.e. accenting the termination ѣ'; hence, they "throw the accent forward" in the other inflections, and extrude the ѣ of the nominative which is merely epenthetic, a strengthening of the original ѣ (*отѣѡъ*).

---

\* The ѣ is retained to indicate the soft sound.

So that the genitive of отецъ is отца́ ; so, too—

купѣцъ	merchant	купца́
вѣнѣцъ	wreath	вѣнца́

But, where the -ецъ is unaccented, the accent is stable and the form merely abbreviated in spelling, e.g. Нѣмецъ German (for Нѣмьцъ), Нѣмца, etc.

Conversely in the genitive plurals in ѣ or ѣ, о, е, е must be restored.

e.g. яйцѣ́	egg	яи́цъ *
зло́	evil	зла́
кольцо́	ring	ко́лецъ
письмо́	letter	пи́семъ
окно́	window	о́конъ
стекло́	pane of glass	сте́колъ
крѣсло́	armchair	крѣ́селъ
овца́	sheep	ове́цъ
судьба́	fate	судѣ́бъ
ру́чка	little hand	ру́чекъ
копѣйка́	the coin	копѣ́екъ

And observe that after a vowel the symbol ѣ replaces the symbol ѣ, but has the same value.

e.g. ше́я neck, diminutive ше́йка, ше́екъ, i.e. šeika, šeik'k ; соловѣ́й nightingale, соловѣ́й, соловѣ́евъ ; муравѣ́й ant, муравѣ́й, муравѣ́евъ.

In these last two instances ѣй represents an original ѣ'й, which in Russian became ѣй. The original inflection would have been соловѣ́й, соловѣ́я.

II. Insertion of о and е for euphony. Similarly, heavy final combinations of consonants are lightened in

---

\* Irregular for яѣцъ.

the nominative singular of masculines and genitive plurals of feminines and neuters; i.e. the terminations in *ъ* and *ь*.

Some instances have already been given; viz. *стекло́, кресло́, письмо́*.

Others are:—

		<i>Gen. Plur.</i>
ма́рка	a <i>mark</i> (German coin)	ма́рокъ
и́гла	needle	и́глоь
и́гра	game	и́горь
ро́зга	cane	ро́зогь
сестра́	sister	сесте́рь or се́стрь
пѣ́сня	song	пѣ́сенъ
ба́рышня	"mademoiselle"	ба́рышень
со́тня	a body of one hundred	со́тенъ
ку́хня	kitchen	ку́хонъ or ку́хонь
зе́мля	earth	зе́мель
ребро́	rib	рёберъ
ведро́	ewer	ве́деръ

In the nominatives:—

		<i>Gen.</i>
оре́ль (pronounce aryól)	eagle	орла́
огóнь	fire	огни́
вѣ́теръ	wind	вѣ́тра
вихо́рь	whirlwind	вихря́
наёмъ	hire	найма́
бои́цъ	warrior	бойца́
за́яцъ	hare	зайца́

Observe the vowel *o* or *e* is inserted according as the syllable is hard or soft.



Thus, too, **тъмá** darkness, **тёмный** dark, **тщáтельно** (for **тъщáтельно**) in vain, **тощій** lean, and compare Russian **дочь, дóчери**, daughter, with the Church Slavonic **дѣщѣри** (for **дѣщѣри**), cf. *θυγατέρες*.\*

An apparent exception really confirms the rule, namely, that, when the effect of extruding the euphonic vowel would be to accumulate consonants, the vowel is retained.

e.g. <b>мертвѣцъ</b>	corpse	<b>мертвеца́</b>
<b>близне́цъ</b>	twin	<b>близнеца́</b>

III. Nevertheless, some heavy combinations of final consonants are tolerated.

(1) In loan words.

e.g. **шрифъ** type (from German) [v. § 11 (δ).]  
**министръ** minister (from French)

(2) In the genitive plural of the abstract termination **-ство**.

e.g. **о́бществъ** from **о́бщество** company  
**министѣрствъ** from **министѣрство** ministry

(3) In a few words where resolution would not be easy.

e.g. **жѣртва** sacrifice **жертвъ**

(4) In such words as **рубль** (masculine) rouble, **корабль** ship (masculine like **ко́нь**), the **л** is mute. [v. § 4 (9).]

(5) In the formation of predicative adjectives no vowel is inserted before **р**.

e.g. **мудръ** wise, **быстръ** swift. [v. § 36 (4).]

---

\* Whence **пáдчерница**, § 97.

IV. In the feminine in **я** of the third declension observe—

цѣрковь	church	цѣркви, цѣрковью
любовь	love	любви, любовью
вошь	louse	вши, вощью
ложь	lie	лжи, ложью
рожь	grye	ржи, рожью

But when **Любовь** is a girl's name it retains in "о" throughout; thus, **Любови, Любовью.**

## THE ADJECTIVE.

### § 33. PRELIMINARY OBSERVATIONS.

(1) *The syntactical importance of the adjective in Russian.*

In English the adjectival function can be expressed in many really irregular ways; e.g. by a noun, "the village pump"; by combinations of adjectives and nouns, "the Civil Service Examination," even to the point of ambiguity, e.g. "the Women's Red Cross Slavery Abolition League"; also, vulgarly, by adverbs, "this 'ere bloke." In German, also, long compound nouns are yet more used to show the dependence.

Russian adjectives are fully declined in gender, number, and case.

In Russian, composition of words is rare and occasional, and fully declined adjectives must be used.

e.g. зубная боль tooth-ache

правительственные указы government decrees

баранья шерсть sheep's wool, etc.

Cf. in French, le ministère de l'intérieur, Home Office; les perquisitions militaires, war demands.

(2) In addition to this, Russian frequently prefers an adjective where other languages use other forms.

e.g. *стеклянная бутылка* a glass bottle, *une bouteille de ver*; St. Elias' day *Ильинъ день*; Igor's Army *Игоревъ полкъ*; the local custom *тамшній или здѣшній обычай* (from *тамъ* there, *здѣсь* here); a reindeer's horns *оленьи рога*.

Such adjectives are called *possessive*, e.g. *Петровъ праздникъ* St. Peter's holiday; *Царицыно село* the Empress's village; or *descriptive*, e.g. *божій храмъ* God's Temple.

Ordinary adjectives when used with nouns are called *attributive*, e.g. *добрый* good, *художественный* artistic; i.e. those not attached to some particular noun, and not serving as a kind of inflected genitive.

(3) Except in the nominative (e masculine, я feminine and neuter) there is no distinction of gender in the plural adjective.

(4) Russian discards the copula "I am, he is," etc., and uses a special form as the *predicative* adjective; this form being the nominative, singular and plural, of the old simple form of the attributive adjective.

e.g. я Георгій	I am George
онъ столяръ	he is a carpenter
они мнѣ знакомы	they are known to me

(5) The attributive adjective can in general have two forms as stated in the preceding section (4), one full, when agreeing with a noun, the other predicative; the latter only used and only surviving with a nomina-

tive form. (Certain predicative relations are expressed by a dative or instrumental, v. § 69, V. and VI.).

This apparent anomaly requires explanation. In older Russian, as in the Teutonic languages, there were two forms of adjectival declension, the determinative and the simple.

The simple form, as in most European languages, was inflected almost the same as the noun, an adjective being in a sense only a fuller form of noun capable of all three genders. Thus *Rōmānus* in Latin is exactly like *equus*, horse, *Rōmāna* like *mensa*, and *Rōmānum* like *bellum*; so, too, *ingens* has the same forms as *gens*, and so on. Similarly, in French the adjective *occidental* follows the form of the noun *cheval*, and *occidentale* of any feminine noun. In Latin there exists little but a grammarian's distinction between *bonus*, *bona*, good, masculine and feminine, and *filius*, *filia*, son, daughter.

So, too, in Russian the simple adjective originally followed nominal declensions almost exactly.

But, there being no article, the Old Slav pronoun *ѣ*, he (obsolete in Russian), was compounded with and postponed to the simple form to make the so-called *determinative* form [v. § 35].

Thus as in German we find *guter Mann*, but *der gute Mann*, in older Russian, too, two forms existed. In modern Russian the *determinative* form has swept the simple form out of existence, except (a) in the nominative when used predicatively, (β) in the possessives and descriptives, some of which follow the simple inflection, (γ) in rather high-flown archaistic style when the old simple forms are used.

(6) The accentuation of the determinative, possessive and descriptive forms, is constant; that of the simple form is very difficult, as difficult as the nominal forms which it follows. We have seen [§ 25] how the loss of the nominative suffix *ъ, ь* has confused the rules for accentuation, and [§§ 27 and 29] the slighter variances in the neuters and feminines. All these rules come in to complicate the formation of the predicative adjective.

(7) In modern Russian no instance survives of adjectives in the third declension.

(8) In the eighteenth century, when Lomonósov (1711–1765) created the modern Russian script out of the old Cyrillic, and set hard and fast rules for Russian, the grammarians introduced some unnecessary complications in the spelling of the determinative forms; e.g. *но́вый* new, *ди́кий* wild, for *но́вой*, *ди́кой* (*но́вые* masc. pl., *но́вые* fem. and neut. pl.).

(9) The adjective may acquire a substantival meaning, but is still declined as an adjective.

e.g. <i>городово́й</i>	policeman
<i>портно́й</i>	tailor
<i>насе́комое</i>	insect
<i>столо́вая</i>	dining-room
<i>да́тская</i>	nursery

#### § 34. THE SIMPLE, POSSESSIVE AND DESCRIPTIVE ADJECTIVES.

(1) For *reference* this is an example of the simple adjective. These forms are now disused save as stated in § 33 (5).

## Dear

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>
	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.	All genders.
Nom.	дорогъ	дорого	дорога	дороги
Acc.	Like N. or G.	дорого	дорогу	Like N. or G.
Gen.	дорога		дороги	дорогихъ
Dat.	дорогу		дорогѣ	дорогимъ
Instr.	дорогими		дорогою	дорогими
Loc.	дорогомъ		дорогѣ	дорогихъ

## Good

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>
	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.	All genders.
Nom.	добръ	добро	добра	добры
Acc.	Like N. or G.	добро	добрѣ	Like N. or G.
Gen.	добра		добры	добрыхъ
Dat.	добрѣ		добрѣ	добрымъ
Instr.	добрыми		доброю	добрыми
Loc.	добромъ		добрѣ	добрыхъ

(2) *The formation of possessive adjectives and examples.*

Possessive adjectives are formed from names in the first and second declensions; those from the first end in -овъ, those from the second in -ынъ, -инъ.

The accentuation is *constant throughout all* the cases. Adjectives in -овъ, -евъ derived from monosyllables generally accent the termination: Петровъ Peter's, Царевъ the Tsar's. Adjectives in -овъ, -евъ derived from other names, not monosyllables, retain the accent as in the name: e.g. Алексѣй, Алексѣевъ; Александръ, Александровъ.

Adjectives in -нѣ are similarly declined, and retain the accent of the name.

e.g. Саша	(Alexander)	Сашинѣ
Никита*	Nikíta	Никитинѣ
Илья	Elias	Ильинѣ
Троица	Trinity	Троицынѣ
сестра	sister	сестринѣ
Царица	Tsarítsa	Царицынѣ
дядя	uncle	дядинѣ

*Note.*—Nouns in -ца take -цынѣ; and мужъ husband, братъ brother, господь Lord, irregularly form мужинѣ, братинѣ, господень.

The two following examples illustrate the declensions:—

Peter's

	Masc.	<i>Singular.</i> Neut.	Fem.	<i>Plural.</i> All genders.
Nom.	Петровъ	Петрово	Петрова	Петровы
Acc.	Like N. or G.	Петрово	Петрову	Like N. or G.
Gen.	Петрова		Петровой	Петровыхъ
Dat.	Петрову		Петровой	Петровымъ
Instr.	Петровымъ		Петровою	Петровыми
Loc.	Петровомъ		Петровой	Петровыхъ

Lord's

	Masc.	<i>Singular.</i> Neut.	Fem.	<i>Plural.</i> All genders.
Nom.	господень	господне	господня	господни
Acc.	Like N. or G.	господне	господню	Like N. or G.
Gen.	господня		господней	господнихъ
Dat.	господню		господней	господнимъ
Instr.	господнимъ		господнею	господними
Loc.	господнемъ		господней	господнихъ

\* Νικήτης.

*Note* that very many family names end in **-овъ** and **-инъ**, and are similarly declined, *except* that the locative singular masculine is **-ѣ**.

e.g. въ Петровѣмъ письмѣ in Peter's letter, but  
я говорѣлъ о Петровѣ I was speaking of  
Petróv.

(3) *Formation of descriptive adjectives.*

Most of these adjectives are soft, being formed from nouns by adding **-ій** to the stem. The nominative singular is, masc. **-ій**, neut. **-ѣ**, fem. **-ья**; and the accent is *constant* and *always* that of the noun. The accusative singular feminine is also in **-ю**.

Otherwise their declension is like that of the soft determinatives. [v. § 35 (2).]

*Observe* that the rules in § 5 as to mutation of consonants must be applied in the formation of these adjectives.

e.g. волкъ wolf, волчій, волчье, волчья  
Богъ god, божій, божье, божья  
лиса fox, лисій, лисье, лисья  
дѣвица or дѣвица maiden, дѣвичій, дѣвичье,  
дѣвичья  
пёсъ dog, пёсій, пёсье, пёсья, i.e. пёсья звѣзда  
the dog-star

*Also* дѣрево wood, деревянный wooden  
кожа leather, кожаный of leather

This termination **-янный** is hard, and is generally applied to words denoting materials.



## § 35. THE DETERMINATIVE ADJECTIVES.

(1) *The scheme and the formation.*

This form of adjective is the most common in Russian, embracing all adjectives except the simpler declensions stated in § 34 (1) and (2).

The paradigms inserted *infra* are to illustrate the application of the rules in § 5 to these adjectives.

A short historical statement will explain away the apparent complications.

In Old Slavonic there was a 3rd person pronoun declined as follows:—

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.
Nom.	и	е	я	и	я	я
Acc.	и	е	ю	я	я	я
Gen.	его	его	ей	ихъ	ихъ	ихъ
Dat.	ему	ему	ей	имъ	имъ	имъ
Instr.	имъ	имъ	ею	ими	ими	ими
Loc.	емъ	емъ	ей	ихъ	ихъ	ихъ

By adding this vocalic pronoun on to the simple adjectival forms, like a postponed article, a *determinative* form was obtained, which in the older language had a slightly different meaning, such as is given in English by the use of the definite article.

In modern Russian the simple form is obsolete in the Nom., but a survey of the paradigm of the full adjective will show where the fusion has taken place, e.g. *могѣтъ*, *могѣбѣ*, i.e. *могѣтъи*, and so on.

Remember that in Russian the *r* of the genitive singular is sounded *в*. [v. § 5 (3) (3).]

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
Masc.	Neut.	Fem.	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.
Hard Soft*	Hard Soft	Hard Soft	Hard Soft	Hard Soft	Hard Soft
N. <b>ый</b> <b>ій</b>	<b>ое</b> <b>ее</b>	<b>ая</b> <b>яя</b>	<b>ые</b> <b>іе</b>	<b>ія</b> <b>ія</b>	<b>ія</b> <b>ія</b>
оѣ accented					
A. As N or G	ое ее	ую юю	N. or G.	Nom.	N. or G.
Masc. and Neut.			All genders.		
G. <b>аго</b>	<b>яго</b>	<b>оѣ</b> <b>еѣ</b>	<b>ыхъ</b>	<b>ихъ</b>	
ѣго accented					
D. <b>ому</b>	<b>ему</b>	<b>оѣ</b> <b>еѣ</b>	<b>ымъ</b>	<b>имъ</b>	
I. <b>ымъ</b>	<b>имъ</b>	<b>ою†</b> <b>ею</b>	<b>ыми</b>	<b>ими</b>	
L. <b>омъ</b>	<b>емъ</b>	<b>оѣ</b> <b>еѣ</b>	<b>ыхъ</b>	<b>ихъ</b>	

The eighteenth century grammarians are responsible for two unnecessary complications.

(i) The invariable nom. sing. masc. hard should be -оѣ, as ѣ when sounded in Russian becomes о. [v. § 32, I.]

But it was decreed that the spelling should be -оѣ, only when the termination was accented; otherwise -ый.

Consequently in guttural stems [v. § 5 (3)] this -ый had to be spelled -іѣ.

e.g. *пѣвый* new, *дѣкій* wild

But in such cases *дѣкій* and similar words are still sounded d'ikā, as though spelt *дѣкой*; whereas *дѣкіе*, where the *і* is there of right, is pronounced d'ikiyě.

\* There are no soft adjectives accented on the termination except palatal stems (nominally hard).

† Commonly contracted, v. § 28 (2).

(ii) The only plural nominative form *should* be -e. The -я is purely orthographic, and in all cases the e and the я in -ья, -ье, -ья, -ье, -ия, -ие are sounded alike, viz. yě.

e.g. добрыя dóbryĭe, худыя (худой bad) khudyĭe

(iii) When the termination is accented, it is usual to write -óro and not -aro.

e.g. храброго of the brave man (khrábrəvə); but  
чужόro of the strange man (čuzóvə).

#### TABLE OF ADJECTIVES.

<i>Hard.</i>		Full form.	Short form.
	Masc.	-ый мѣлый	мѣлъ gentle
	Neut.	-ое мѣло	мѣло
	Fem.	-ая мѣлая	мѣла
<i>Soft.</i>	Masc.	-ій синій	синь blue
	Neut.	-ее синее	сине
	Fem.	-ья синья	синя

#### (2) Examples of the determinative adjective.

<i>Singular.</i>	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.
Nom.	бѣлый	бѣлое	бѣлая
Acc.	N. or G.	бѣлое	бѣлую
Gen.	бѣлаго		бѣлой
Dat.	бѣлому		бѣлой
Instr.	бѣлымъ		бѣлою
Loc.	бѣломъ		бѣлой
<i>Plural.</i>			
Nom.	бѣлые	бѣлыя	бѣлыя
Acc.	N. or G.	бѣлыя	N. or G.
Gen.		бѣлыхъ	
Dat.		бѣлымъ	
Instr.		бѣлыми	
Loc.		бѣлыхъ	

бѣлъ, бѣла́, бѣло, бѣлы white.

<i>Singular.</i>			
	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.
Nom.	прямой	прямое	прямая
Acc.	N. or G.	прямое	прямую
Gen.	прямого		прямой
Dat.	прямому		прямой
Instr.	прямымъ		прямою
Loc.	прямомъ		прямой

<i>Plural.</i>			
	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.
Nom.	прямые	прямых	прямых
Acc.	N. or G.	прямых	N. or G.
Gen.	прямыхъ		
Dat.	прямымъ		
Instr.	прямыми		
Loc.	прямыхъ		

прямъ, прямá, прямо, прýмы upright.

<i>Singular.</i>			
	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.
Nom.	синий	синее	синяя
Acc.	N. or G.	синее	синюю
Gen.	синяго		синей
Dat.	синему		синей
Instr.	синимъ		синюю
Loc.	синемъ		синей

<i>Plural.</i>			
	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.
Nom.	синие	синих	синих
Acc.	N. or G.	синих	N. or G.
Gen.	синихъ		
Dat.	синимъ		
Instr.	синими		
Loc.	синихъ		

синь, синя́, сине, сини blue

<i>Singular.</i>	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.
Nom.	баранѣй	баранѣ	баранѣя
Acc.	N. or G.	баранѣ	баранѣю
Gen.	баранѣлю		баранѣей
Dat.	баранѣму		баранѣей
Instr.	баранѣмъ		баранѣю
Loc.	баранѣмъ		баранѣей

<i>Plural.</i>	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.
Nom.	баранѣи	баранѣи	баранѣи
Acc.	N. or G.	баранѣи	N. or G.
Gen.	баранѣихъ		
Dat.	баранѣимъ		
Instr.	баранѣими		
Loc.	баранѣихъ		

баранѣй, баранѣя, баранѣе, баранѣи of a ram [v. § 34 (3)].

<i>Singular.</i>	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.
Nom.	великѣй	великое	великая
Acc.	N. or G.	великое	великую
Gen.	великаго		великой
Dat.	великому		великой
Instr.	великимъ		великою
Loc.	великомъ		великой

<i>Plural.</i>	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.
Nom.	великѣе	великѣя	
Acc.	N. or G.	великѣя	N. or G.
Gen.	великихъ		
Dat.	великимъ		
Instr.	великими		
Loc.	великихъ		

великъ, великѣя, великѣо, великѣи great.

<i>Singular.</i>	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.
Nom.	большой	большое	большая
Acc.	N. or G.	большое	большую
Gen.	большого		большой
Dat.	большому		большой
Instr.	большимъ		большою
Loc.	большомъ		большой

<i>Plural.</i>	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.
Nom.	большие	большие	
Acc.	N. or G.	большие	N. or G.
Gen.		большихъ	
Dat.		большимъ	
Instr.		большими	
Loc.		большихъ	

Not used predicatively. большой, big, large.

Thus: чужой, чужь, чуже, чужа, чужи strange.

<i>Singular.</i>	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.
Nom.	свѣжий	свѣжее	свѣжая
Acc.	N. or G.	свѣжее	свѣжую
Gen.	свѣжаго*		свѣжей
Dat.	свѣжему		свѣжей
Instr.	свѣжимъ		свѣжею
Loc.	свѣжемъ		свѣжей

<i>Plural.</i>	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.
Nom.	свѣжие	свѣжия	
Acc.	N. or G.	свѣжия	N. or G.
Gen.		свѣжихъ	
Dat.		свѣжимъ	
Instr.		свѣжими	
Loc.		свѣжихъ	

свѣжъ, свѣжа, свѣжо, свѣжи fresh. Thus: хороший, хорошъ, хорошó, хороша, хороші excellent.

\* Sounded svěživъ.

## § 36. THE FORMATION OF THE PREDICATIVES.

Consult § 32 regarding the "insertion" of *o* and *e* to avoid an accumulation of final consonants.

(1) The following determinative adjectives have *no special* predicative form, and predicatively the full form must be used:—

(a) All adjectives in *-скій*, e.g. *а́нглийскій* English, *фра́нцузскій* French, *ру́сскій* Russian, *горо́дскій* municipal, etc.

(б) *большой* big (physically): *-великъ* is used, e.g. *э́тотъ мужъ вели́къ* this man is tall; but *э́тотъ до́мъ большо́й*, this house is big.

(γ) Adjectives denoting materials in *-янный*, e.g. *дре́вянный* wooden, *сере́брянный* silver, etc., and the descriptive adjectives, such as *бара́ний* of a ram, v. § 34 (3).

(2) The following adjectives are *only* used in the predicative form: *радъ* glad, *гора́здъ* skilful.

e.g. *я́ о́чень радъ* I am very glad, *она́ на всѣ́ гора́зда* she is clever in everything.

(3) *Possessives* [v. § 34 (2)] are *only* declined with the simple forms.

Possessives in *-овъ* never shift their accent.

Possessives in *-инъ* are thus accented: *сестри́нъ*, *сестри́на*, *сестри́но*, *сестри́ны*, as *predicatives*.

(4) All other adjectives have both forms, and the predicative has to be deduced from the determinative.

In polysyllabic derivative adjectives there is generally no change of accent.

e.g. мѹжественный masculine, мѹжественъ, мѹжественна, мѹжественно

But in simpler original adjectives there is practically no rule but experience. A few instances may be given.

e.g. (i) нѹвый new, новъ, новá, нѹво, нѹвы

Thus, too, бодръ gay, быстръ swift, великъ big, гордъ proud, твердъ hard, тихъ still, толстъ fat, старъ old, цѣлъ whole, чистъ clean. [v. § 32, II.]

Thus, too:—

тѣмный dark, тѣмень, темна́, темно́, темны́  
красный red, красенъ, красна́, красно́, красны́  
тѣплый hot, тёпелъ, тепла́, тепло́, теплы́  
чёрный black, чёренъ, черна́, черно́, черны́

(ii) го́лый naked, голъ, гола́, голо́, го́лы

Thus, too, высѹкъ lofty, далѣкъ far, тяжѣлъ heavy, бѣ́лый white, ширѹкъ far.

e.g. далѣ́кий, далѣ́къ, далека́, далеко́, далѣ́ки

(iii) во́льный free, волѣнъ, во́льна, во́льно, во́льны

Thus, too, лё́гкий light (in weight), лё́гокъ, легка́, легко́, легка́; си́льный powerful, ў́мный sensible.

(iv) сухѹ́й dry, сухá, сѹхо, сухи́

Thus, too, босъ barefooted, глухъ deaf, гни́ль foul, до́рогъ dear, живъ alive, мо́лодь young, нагъ naked, нѣ́мъ dumb, плохъ poorly, слѣ́пъ blind, хромъ lame, etc.; бо́льной sick, бо́ленъ, больна́, больно́, больны́; честнѹ́й or чѣ́стный honest, чѣ́стенъ, чѣ́стна, чѣ́ство, чѣ́стны́.



§ 37. THE COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.—*Formation.*

(1) The Russian adjective has two degrees of comparison, comparative and superlative.

The comparative is in two forms: uninflected, e.g. *бóльше радъ*, from *радъ* glad; inflected, e.g. *глубже* deeper, from *глубокий*.

The inflected comparative has a predicative and determinative form, e.g. *бѣлѣ*, *бѣлѣйшій* whiter.

It is formed from the positive in two ways—by adding *-ѣ*, *-ѣйшій* to the stem, the accent generally shifting to the termination; or by adding *-ѣ*, *-ѣйшій* to the stem, the accent remaining on the radical syllable.

*-ѣ*, *-ѣйшій*, has become the *regular* form.

When adding either termination, *-ѣ* or *-ѣ*, the rules for the mutation of consonants [v. § 5] must be strictly observed, and should be re-perused before the student proceeds any further with this section. In addition, he should remember [v. § 2 (3)] that in older Russian *ѣ* had a value approximating to *я*, and therefore, just as *к*, *г*, *х* + *я* in modern Russian make *ча*, *жа*, *ша*, so, too, in the comparatives *к*, *г*, *х* + *-ѣ*, *-ѣйшій*, make *чайшій*, *жайшій*, *шайшій*.

Similarly, *ск* or *ст* + *-ѣйшій* or *-ѣ* make *-ще*, *-щайшій*, e.g. *чѣстый* pure, *чѣще*, *чѣщайшій*; *плоскій* flat, *плосчайшій*.

(2) No inflections for the superlative exist.

The comparative form is used, or the positive with suitable pronouns or adverbs. So, too, "beautiful," "content" in English have no inflected degrees of comparison.

In some cases, where the shorter comparative is used, the longer form is reserved as a superlative.

e.g. **высокій** high, **выше**, **высшій**; superlative **высочайшій**.

(3) The substitutes for the superlative are:—

(a) The prefixing of **наи-** to the positive or comparative.

e.g. **Вотъ наи-лучшій примѣръ.**

This is the best example.

**Это наи-мѣньшая сума.**

This is the least sum.

(β) The prefixing of **самый**, self, to the positive or comparative.

e.g. **Это самая интересная книга изъ всѣхъ мною прочитанныхъ.**

This is the most interesting book of those I have read.

**Нашъ домъ самый красивый въ деревнѣ.**

Our home is the prettiest in the village.

(γ) The addition of a form of **весь**, all, to the comparative, either **всего** or **всѣхъ**.

e.g. **Эта книга интереснѣе всѣхъ которыя я прочиталъ.**

This book is the most interesting of any I have read.

**Вашъ совѣтъ полезнѣе всѣхъ.**

Your advice is the best.

- (δ) The absolute superlative, as in English, is indicated by the positive with such words as *очень* very, etc.

e.g. *Обѣдъ былъ очень вкусенъ.*

The dinner was very tasty.

- (ε) The superlative also can be formed by using—  
*въ высшей стѣпени* in the highest degree.

e.g. *Онъ въ высшей стѣпени великодѣушенъ.*

He is most generous.

### § 38. THE COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.—*Rules.*

I. The uninflected form, i.e. with *болѣе* more, is used:—

- (α) With adjectives like *радъ* glad.
- (β) At discretion with lengthy adjectives, e.g. *болѣе глубокий* deeper.
- (γ) When there is a comparison of two adjectives.  
e.g. *Рѣка Москвѣ болѣе широкá нѣжели глубока́.*  
The river Moscow is broader than it is deep.
- (δ) With adjectives (such as participles, derivative words, etc.), which it would be inconvenient to lengthen any more.  
e.g. *Никогдá не видѣла своего мѹжа болѣе оскорблённымъ.*  
She had never seen her husband more grieved.
- У него́ болѣе живóй умъ.*  
He has a keener mind.
- (ε) Adjectives ending in *-скій, -скóй*.

II. Only four adjectives have a simple inflected superlative.

e.g.	низкій	low	нижайший
	высокій	high	высочайший
	глубокий	deep	глубочайший
	малый	small	малейший
			(better най-меньше)

III. Adjectives in -сый, -жий, -зый, -чий, and many in -кий, -гий, have no *declinable* comparative.

e.g.	лысый	bald	лысѣ
	свѣжий	fresh	свѣжѣ
	горячий	warm	горячѣ

The reason probably is that where the regular form -ѣ, -ѣйшій is used, the combination of sibilants would be too heavy, e.g. лышайшій, свѣжайшій, горячайшій, and the want is supplied in other ways; *v.* next sub-division.

IV. The indeclinable comparative with the prefix по- can be used in concord with a noun.

e.g. Я купилъ шляпу побольше.  
I have bought a larger hat.

When the object of comparison is stated, the prefix по- has a diminutive sense.

e.g. Ваша лошадь по-быстрѣ Ивановой.  
Your horse is a little quicker than that of Iván.

V. There are two methods of translating "than":—

- (1) The use of **чѣмъ**, or rarely **нежели**: when a phrase follows the comparison.

e.g. **Этотъ урокъ легче чѣмъ (нежели) мы думали.**  
This lesson is easier than we thought.

- (2) When the object of comparison is a noun, the noun may be in the genitive.

e.g. **Юрій умнѣе своего брата Кузьмы.**  
George is more sensible than his brother Kuźmá.

### § 39. THE COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

#### *Examples.*

I. The regular form of comparison is **-ѣе**, **-ѣйшій**, predicative indeclinable and declinable.

e.g. **любезный** amiable, **любезнѣе**, **любезнѣйшій**  
**-ѣе** is often abbreviated to **-ѣй**.

When the positive cannot in *any* part of its declension throw the accent on to the ending, the original accentuation is retained.

e.g. **справедливый** just, **справедливѣе**, **справедливѣйшій**

II. Another very common form is **-ѣе**, **-ѣшій**, the adjective retaining its original accent.

This is nearly always used when the positive drops a suffix, e.g. **-ный**, **-кій**, and the comparative termination is attached to the root.

With a very few adjectives the predicative neuter -ше, of the declinable form -ыйшій, is used alternatively with -іе.

(a) Where the suffix of the positive is retained:—

e.g.	крѣпкій	powerful	крѣпче	крѣпчайшій
	лёгкій	light (in weight)	лёгче	лёгчайшій
	мелкій	small	мельче	мельчайшій
	бойкій	brisk	бойчѣе (a modern form)	
	ловкій	clever	ловчѣе	
	горькій	bitter	горше	

(b) Where the suffix of the positive is dropped in the undeclined comparative, but generally retained in the determinative:—

e.g.	высокій	high	выше	высшій*	высочайшій
	глубокий	deep	глубже		глубочайшій
	низкій	low	ниже	низшій	нижайшій
	поздній*	late	позже*		позднѣйшій
	близкій	near	ближе		ближайшій
	узкій	narrow	уже		
	редкій	rare	рѣже		редчайшій
	сладкій	sweet	сладше†		сладчайшій
	кроткій	gentle	[кроче]‡		кротчайшій
	короткій	short	короче		кратчайшій
	тонкій	thin	тоньше		тончайшій
	широкий	broad	шире		широчайшій
	далёкій	far	дальше		дальнѣйшій

\* V. § 4 (7) and (9).

† A Church Slav mutation from тѣ.

‡ More usually бѣже кроткій.

(c) When the positive is not altered, there being no suffix :—

e.g. твёрдый	hard	твёрже	твёрдѣйшій
богатый	rich	{ богаче богатѣ }	богатѣйшій
худой	bad, lean	{ хуже (bad) худѣ (lean) }	худшій худѣйшій
плоскій	flat	плосче	
тихий	quiet	тише	тишайшій
строгий	stern	строже	строжайшій
дорогой	dear	дороже	дражайшій
молодой	young	моложе	младшій
старый	old	старше	старшій
крутой	steep	круче	крутѣйшій
дешёвый	cheap	дешевле	
пустой	{ desolate empty }	пуще пустѣ	пущій пустѣйшій
чистый	clean	чище	чистѣйшій

It will be observed that in modern Russian the mutations mostly only occur in the uninflected form of the comparative.

Note, too—

дольгій long, больше (irregular, due to analogy of больше)  
далёкій far, дальше or далѣ, дальнѣйшій (from дальный)  
рано (adverb) early, раньше or ранѣ

With these few exceptions the comparison of the adjective is regular; and all derivative adjectives, e.g. знаменитый famous, proceed in accordance with the rule, знаменитѣ, знаменитѣйшій.

So, too, сердитый angry.

The inflected comparative of such words is rarely used; the superlative replaced, as stated in § 37 (3).

III. The following adjectives have no positive:—

e.g. *лучше, лучший* better; *меньше* less; *меньше,*  
*меньший* smaller; *больше* more; *больше, больший,*  
*бigger.*

*Observe* the distinction:—

<i>меньшой</i> junior	<i>большой</i> big
<i>меньший</i> smaller	<i>больший</i> bigger

*Хороший* and *добрый* are used as positives for *лучше*; but *добрее, добрейший* also exist; also *малый* as a positive for *меньше*; and *великий* and *большой* for *больше, больше.*

## THE PRONOUN.

### § 40 (1). PRELIMINARY REMARKS ON THE PRONOUNS.

The pronouns in Russian present very little difficulty.

*Observe* (1) in the pronouns the genitive in -ro is written -oro, -ero, and pronounced and accented *аво, ево.* The dative in -му is also oxytone.

(2) Pronominal adjectives (such as *который, такой*) are declined exactly like ordinary adjectives [v. § 35 (2)].

(3) It will be observed that pronouns, though they are hard stems, take a *soft* plural, e.g. *самъ* self, *сами.*

The reason of this is that in Old Russian the nominative and accusative plural masculine were *и* and *ы.* In Russian the old feminine plural forms in *ы* have superseded the masculine; but the same survival of the old nominative is found in the old participles in -ръ, now used as the past tense, e.g. *былъ, были.*



§ 40 (2). TABLE OF RUSSIAN PRONOUNS AND ADVERBS.

Interrogative	кто who?	что what?	кой* which?	чей whose?	какъ how?	гдѣ where?	куда whither?	откуда whence?	какой what sort?	когда when?	почему† why?	сколько how much?
Relative	кто	что	кой*	чей	какъ якъ*	гдѣ	куда	откуда	какой	когда	почему	сколько
Demonstrative (remote)	тотъ	то	свой† его ed\$	его ed\$ ихъ	такъ	тамъ	туда	оттуда	такой таковой	тогда	потому	столько
Demonstrative (near)	это	это			этакъ	здесь			этакимъ (эдакимъ)			
Demonstrative (remote)	оный	оно										
Demonstrative (near)	сей	сѣ се			сякъ*		сюда	отсюда отсѣду				
Universals	каждый every весь all всякій everyone	всѣ			всѣмъ anyway	вездѣ every- where		отовсюду	всякій every	всегда always		

Personal	я	ты	онъ	она	оно	моя	твоя	его	ея	свой	†
1st per. sing.	я	ты	онъ	она	оно	моя	твоя	его	ея	свой	†
2nd "	ты	ты	онъ	она	оно	моя	твоя	его	ея	свой	†
3rd "	онъ	онъ	онъ	она	оно	моя	твоя	его	ея	свой	†
1st " plur.	мы	мы	мы	мы	мы	мы	мы	мы	мы	мы	†
2nd "	вы	вы	вы	вы	вы	вы	вы	вы	вы	вы	†
3rd "	они	они	они	они	они	они	они	они	они	они	†
Reflexive	себя	†									
Indefinite	кто	что									
	нѣкто	нѣчто	нѣкій	нѣкая	нѣкое	нѣкто	нѣчто	нѣкій	нѣкая	нѣкое	†
	somebody	something	a certain	a certain	a certain	somebody	something	a certain	a certain	a certain	†
Negative	никто	ничего									
	самъ	самый	самъ	самый	самъ	самъ	самый	самъ	самый	самъ	†
Identity	тотъ	же	тотъ	же	тотъ	же	тотъ	же	тотъ	же	
	тотъ	тотъ	тотъ	тотъ	тотъ	тотъ	тотъ	тотъ	тотъ	тотъ	†
	the same	the same	the same	the same	the same	the same	the same	the same	the same	the same	†
Difference	другой	иной	иной	иной	иной	иной	иной	иной	иной	иной	
	иной	иной	иной	иной	иной	иной	иной	иной	иной	иной	†
	another	another	another	another	another	another	another	another	another	another	†

\* Obsolete. † Or with any suitable preposition, e.g. причём. ‡ Reflexive for all persons. § Genitives, cf. Latin *ſui*.  
 || только, like Latin *tantum*, means "only." ¶ Both sounded *oni*. \*\* *ихни* vulgar.

## § 41. EXAMPLES OF THE PRONOUNS.

I. *The Interrogative* (singular and plural).

N. V.	кто (khtó)	for persons	что (štó)	for things
Acc.	кого́ (kavó)	„ „	что	„ „
Gen.	кого́	„ „	чего́ (čivó)	„ „
Dat.	кому́	„ „	чему́	„ „
Instr.	ке́мъ	„ „	че́мъ	„ „
Loc.	комъ	„ „	че́мъ	„ „

ко́тoрый (which of several?) and ка́кой (of what sort?) are declined adjectivally.

## кой which?

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>
	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.	All genders.
Nom.	кой	коё	ко́я	ко́и
Acc.	N. or G.	коё	ко́ю	N. or G.
Gen.	кого́*		ко́ей	ко́ихъ
Dat.	ко́ему		ко́ей	ко́имъ
Instr.	ко́имъ		ко́ею	ко́ими
Loc.	ко́емъ		ко́ей	ко́ихъ

## чей whose?

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>
	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.	All genders.
Nom.	чей	чье́	чья́	чьи́
Acc.	N. or G.	чье́	чью́	N. or G.
Gen.	чье́го́ (čivó)		чье́й	чьи́хъ
Dat.	чье́му		чье́й	чьи́мъ
Instr.	чьи́мъ		чье́ю	чьи́ми
Loc.	чье́мъ		чье́й	чьи́хъ

---

\* Sounded kóyivə.

*Remarks.*—(1) *кой* is practically disused except in poetry, and a few proverbs.

(2) *сколько* is the only other declinable interrogative form.

Nom. Voc. Acc.	ско́лько
Gen. Loc.	ско́лькѣхъ
Dat.	ско́лькимъ
Instr.	ско́лькими

*столько* is similarly declined.

*Observe.*—In the nominative and accusative *сколько* is a noun governing the genitive plural; in other cases an adjective.

e.g. Ско́лько книгъ вы нашлѣ?

How many books have you found?

Я самъ не знаю́ ско́лькими́ страна́ми я владѣю.

I do not myself know of how many countries

I am the master.

## II. *Relatives.*

These forms are now identical with the interrogatives. But, except in proverbs and poetry, *кто* and *что* are disused, *ко́торый* replacing them as relatives.

*кто* and *что* are scarcely ever used in strict apposition.

e.g. Я встрѣтилъ Ива́на ко́торому я обща́лъ мою ло́шадь.

I met John to whom I had promised my horse.

But they are commonly employed in distributive phrases *where the relative precedes*.

е.г. Кто бы ни появился у окна, въ тогѣ немедленно стрѣлили.

Whoever appeared at a window, (at him) they instantly shot.

Что бы вы ни дѣлали, вы этимъ горю не поможете.  
Whatever you do, you will not remedy the sorrow thereby.

### III. Demonstratives.

#### тотъ that

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Plural. All genders.</i>
Nom.	тотъ	то	та	тѣ
Acc.	N. or G.	то	ту	N. or G.
Gen.	того*		той	тѣхъ
Dat.	тому		той	тѣмъ
Instr.	тѣмъ		тою	тѣми
Loc.	томъ		той	тѣхъ

#### этотъ this

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Plural. All genders.</i>
Nom.	этотъ	это	эта	эти
Acc.	N. or G.	это	эту	N. or G.
Gen.	этого		этой	этихъ
Dat.	этому		этой	этимъ
Instr.	этимъ		этою	этими
Loc.	этомъ		этой	этихъ

#### оный that

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom.				оные, оныя
Acc.	Like any hard adjective in -ый			оныхъ
Gen.				оныхъ
Dat.				онымъ
Instr.				оными
Loc.				оныхъ

\* Sounded tavó.

сей this				
<i>Singular.</i>				<i>Plural.</i>
	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.	All genders.
Nom.	сей	сіе сѣ	сія	сіи
Acc.	N. or G.	сіе сѣ	сію	N. or G.
Gen.	сего*		сей	сихъ
Dat.	семѹ		сей	симъ
Instr.	симъ		сею	ими
Loc.	сѣмъ		сей	сихъ

Consult § 2 (3).

All the rest of the declinable pronouns on the demonstrative lines in the table follow the regular forms of the determinative adjectives without variation. e.g. *такій, таковій* such as that; *этакій* such as this, etc.

*Remarks.*—Practically only *тотъ* and *этотъ* are used in modern Russian. *оный* is found in legal documents, and *сей* in set phrases; e.g. *сего́дня* (sívod'nya) to-day, *сейча́съ* in a minute, *до сихъ поръ* up to the present, *сію мину́ту* this very minute.

#### IV. Universal Pronouns.

*всякій* of all sorts, and *каждый* each, are declined like the determinative adjectives.

*весь*, all, drops the vowel "е" [v. § 32, I].

<i>Singular.</i>				<i>Plural.</i>
	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.	All genders.
Nom.	весь	всѣ	вся	всѣ
Acc.	N. or G.	всѣ	всю	N. or G.
Gen.	всего†		всей	всѣхъ
Dat.	всемѹ		всей	всѣмъ
Instr.	всѣмъ		всѣю	всѣми
Loc.	всѣмъ		всей	всѣхъ

\* Sounded sívó.

† Sounded fáivó.

V. *Personal Pronouns and Possessives.**Singular.*

	1st pers.	2nd pers.	3rd pers.			Reflexive.
			Masc.	Neut.	Fem.	
Nom.	я	ты	онъ	оно́	она́	—
Acc.	меня́	тебѣ́	его́*			себя́
Gen.	меня́	тебѣ́	его́			себя́
Dat.	мнѣ́	тебѣ́	ему́			себѣ́
Instr.	мно́ю	тобо́ю	имъ			собо́ю
	мно́й	тобо́й				собо́й
Loc.	мнѣ́	тебѣ́	ѣмъ			себѣ́

*Plural.*

Nom.	мы	вы	они́	они́	они́†	As singular.
A.G.L.	насъ	васъ	ихъ			
Dat.	намъ	вамъ	имъ			
Instr.	на́ми	ва́ми	ими			

The close similarity of some of these forms with the Latin pronouns will strike the student, e.g. *tibi* тебѣ́, *sibi* себѣ́.

Refer back to § 2 (3) and § 35 (1).

The possessives мой, твой, свой are declined like кой [v. § 41, I.], but accent the last syllable of the terminations uniformly; e.g. моё, моѣ, моёй, моего́, моемѹ́, моѣ́, etc.

нашъ our, and вашъ your, are declined alike, viz. :

	<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
	Masc.	Neut.	All genders.	
Nom.	нашъ	на́ше	на́ша	на́ши
Acc.	N. or G.	на́ше	на́шу	N. or G.
Gen.	на́шего		на́шей	на́шихъ
Dat.	на́шему		на́шей	на́шимъ
Instr.	на́шимъ		на́шею	на́шими
Loc.	на́шемъ		на́шей	на́шихъ

\* Sounded yivó, yim, etc. † Commonly sounded like acc. еѣ.

‡ Sounded like они́.

*Remarks.*—(1) *свой* and *себя* always refer back to the subject, *whatever the person*.

e.g. *Вы продали свою честь.*

You have sold your honour.

The 3rd person pronouns when they are *not* reflexive are the genitives *его, её, ихъ*.

e.g. *Мнѣ сказали что купецъ уже продалъ его товары.*

They told me that the merchant has already sold his (somebody else's) goods.

In vulgar speech *ихни* is used for *ихъ* their.

When *себя* is attached to reflexive or passive verbs it takes the shortened form *ся* (*sounded* *ca*) after consonants, *сь* after vowels.

In older Russian all the pronouns had abbreviated enclitic forms [cf. French "*moi*," "*me*," etc.], viz. *мя, тя, ся* for *меня, тебя, себя*; *ми, ти, си* for *мнѣ, тебѣ, себѣ*. Of these forms only *ся* survives.

e.g. *Въ отчаяніи плѣнникъ закололъ себя.*

In despair the prisoner stabbed himself (reflexive).

*Стыжусь этого.*

I am ashamed of this (a reflexive verb).

*Чашка разбилась.*

The cup was smashed (a passive).

(2) When *его, ему, ей, её, ихъ, имъ, имн, ей, ёю, ёмъ* are governed by *any* preposition, the letter *н* is prefixed to them.

e.g. *къ нему* to him (sound *knemú*)

*въ ней* in her (sound *vńéi*)

*противъ нихъ* against them



у него́ with him [*chez lui*]  
 съ ни́ми with them (sound sními)  
 бли́зь не́я near her  
 на него́ against him (sound nañivó)  
 на немъ on it (sound nanyóm)

*But* егó ра́ди for his sake (the preposition follows)  
 о́коло егó до́ма near his house  
 по́дъ ихъ вла́стью under their power, etc.

In these two instances егó and ихъ are possessive pronouns, not governed by the preposition.

(3) As in the nouns and adjectives, the instrumental singular feminine -ою, -ею, is often shortened to -ой, -ей.

(4) As the verbs mostly have full personal inflections, the pronouns are not added except for emphasis.

e.g. кля́немъ	we swear
слы́шу	I hear
понима́ешь?	do you understand?

## VI. *The Indefinite Pronouns.*

These are formed, as will be seen in the table in various ways, by prefixes and suffixes; cf. English who, whoever, whoso, whosoever.

(1) Prefixing нѣ- accented.

(2) Adding ни́будь (i.e. as it may be, from бу́дь, imperative of бы́ть). [v. § 57, II. and § 82, III.]

(3) Prefixing кое- with a *distributive* sense.

e.g. гдѣ-ни́-бу́дь	somewhere or other
кѣе-гдѣ	here and there
кѣе-кѣо	various people (say)

*But* нѣкоторые some people (say)

(4) Adding -то. This suffix may be used with nouns as well, and gives an ironic or vague sense.

e.g. человекъ-то	that kind of man
какой-то	some sort or other
кто-то	somebody you know who

### VII. *The Negative Pronouns.*

These are formed by prefixing *ни-* *nor*.

When declined with prepositions the compound breaks up, and the preposition precedes the pronoun immediately.

e.g. ни на когó	against no one
ни на какомъ мѣстѣ	not on any place

In Russian a negative pronoun requires a negative verb, and, contrary to modern English practice, a double negative affirms the negative, and does not destroy it.

e.g. Никогдá не было войны похóжей на тепѣрешнюю.  
Never was there a war like the present war.

Я нигдѣ не видѣлъ вашего брата.  
I could not see your brother anywhere.

But consult § 85.

### VIII. *The Pronouns of Identity.*

(1) By affixing -же to any demonstrative, identity is implied.

e.g. эготъ-же	the same as this
таковóй-же	the same sort as that

(2) The words *самъ* and *самый*.

*Самъ* means "self"; as in English, I myself я самъ.

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>
	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.	All genders.
Nom.	самъ	самó	самá	самѣ
Acc.	самогó	самó	самѹ†	N. or G.
Gen.	самогó*			самѣхъ
Dat.	самомѹ			самѣмъ
Instr.	самѣмъ			самѣмѣ
Loc.	самóмъ			самѣхъ

As regards the soft plural самѣ, cf. § 40 (1) (3). It has been carried all through.

Самѣй means "the same," and is declined like a regular determinative adjective.

For its use to form the superlative, v. § 37 (3).

#### IX. *The Pronouns of Difference.*

The meanings of другóй and иной should be marked. другóй is "other," Latin *alius*, Greek ἄλλος, i.e. anything indeterminate, not what is being thought of. иной is "some other," Latin *ceteri*, Greek ἕτεροι, a more or less determinate object.

e.g. Нѣкоторые этого не мóгутъ повѣтъ.

Some cannot grasp this (fact).

Иные мóгутъ подѹмать что онъ сошѣлъ съ умá.

Some (*quidam*, certain people) may think he has gone mad.

Однѣ, однѣ [v. § 2 (3)], the plural of однѣ one, also means "some"; cf. English, the one says, the other . . .

So, too, иногдá sometimes, from time to time (definite)

нѣкогдá sometimes (uncertain)

когдá-то at some time or other (indeterminate)

прóчѣе, прóчѣя means "the rest," "the remainder."

In the singular it occurs in the phrase:—

въ прóчемъ for the rest (of the argument, etc.).

---

\* Sounded samovŭ. † Or samoe.



## THE VERB.

## § 42 (2). PRELIMINARY OBSERVATIONS.

*The Parts of the Russian Verb.*

(i) The Russian verb presents little difficulty in comparison with many other modern languages. As was remarked in § 10, the forms of conjugation are very much reduced. They are:—

- (1) The infinitive.
- (2) A fully conjugated present tense, used in perfective verbs as the future.
- (3) A past tense consisting of an old participle in -лъ, with the personal pronouns, the copula, as usual in Russian, being omitted.
- (4) An imperative formed directly from the present tense.
- (5) A present “gerundive”\* active in -я, and present participle in -ущій or -ящій.
- (6) A past participle active in -вшій, and a past gerundive\* in -въ or -вшій.

These last-named forms are comparable with the predicatives and determinatives of the comparative, and originate in the same way. In older Russian *ши* was a feminine suffix of certain adjectives.

(7) A present participle passive in -емый, and

(8) A past participle passive in -тый or -тый.

The participles are all fully declined like ordinary adjectives.

(9) A verbal noun in -ие.

The functions of these parts are more fully discussed in the Syntax, § 88 and 89.

---

\* This so-called “gerundive” is merely an indeclinable participle, only used in agreement with the subject of the sentence.

*The Deficiencies and the "Aspects" (вѣды).*

(ii) Thus in Russian there is *no* conjunctive, only one conjugated tense, only one so-called past "tense" to express imperfects, preterites, perfects, pluperfects, etc. The future imperfective is formed by a compound tense, the infinitive with бѣау, one of the forms of бѣти to be.

The obvious deficiencies are supplemented by the *aspects* of the Russian verb.

This subject cannot at present be approached; it may be briefly explained. [v. §§ 58 and 92.]

In English, "I do," "I am doing," "I was doing," "I did," "I used to do," "I *do* do," "I have done," all define the nature of the act; e.g. "I am doing" is the continuous conjugation; "I used to do" the habitual; "I have **done**" marks the completion or perfective aspect, and so on.

If the reader knows any Latin, and can imagine Latin reduced to one tense, but converting the other tenses into separate conjugations with new infinitives to match, he will understand what has happened in Russian. Old Russian had a far fuller complement of tenses, *imperfect*, *ao*rist, *perfect*, etc. In modern Russian "aspects" replace the tenses and fulfil entirely the same object.

If Latin had evolved an infinitive *labōrābāre*, from the imperfect *labōrābam*, to express the habitual aspect, or *labōrāvire* (from *labōrāvī*) to express the completion or perfective, such separate by-forms of the verb would very nearly correspond with the Russian aspects. Such desideratives as *ēsūrīre*, from *ēsūrus*, future participle of

ἐλθ̄ to eat, and the inceptives in *-esco*, might indeed in the parlance of Slavonic grammar be termed "aspects."

To those who know a little Greek, the aspects will be even more familiar.

Thus the present forms νοσεῖν to be ill, ἀποθνήσκω to die, correspond to the imperfective бо́лѣтъ or хворáтъ and умира́тъ; the aorist forms ἐνόσησα, ἰοσῆσαι, ἀποθανεῖν, to the perfective обо́лѣтъ, захворáтъ, умерéтъ, to be taken ill, to die. E.g. онъ обо́лѣтъ, захворáлъ, ἐνόσησε; but онъ бо́лѣлъ, he was ill some time, ἐνόσει; онъ умира́лъ, he lay a-dying, ἀπέθνησκε.

And just as νοσήσω, etc., is a future, not a present, but has the aorist stem, so захворáю, умрѣ́ signify I shall fall ill, etc. E.g. умрѣ́тъ отъ чахóтки he will die of consumption.

### *How the Parts are Formed.*

(iii) To know every form of the Russian verb, it is only necessary to learn the infinitive and 3rd person singular present. The rest follow.

### *Verbs Original and Derivative.*

(iv) Verbs may be either original—i.e. unreferable to any simpler form—or derivative, from nouns or other verbs. E.g. in English "to fall," "to write," are original; "to book," "to tabulate" derivative (from the noun "book," and the Latin *tābula*, table). Or as in Latin, *dicere* to say, *iudicare*, from *iudex*, a judge.

Derivatives, verbs which mostly represent complex ideas, greatly outnumber the primary verbs ; in frequency of use they are less, as the simpler relations have to be constantly re-stated.

In Latin derivative verbs have a vocalic stem, e.g. *iudicā-re, monē-re, audī-re*.\* So, too, in Russian дѹма thought, дѹмать to think ; зелёный green, зеленѣть to become green ; живѣ alive, жить to live ("original"), оживѣть to revive, from живѣй alive.

The derivative verbs being the more numerous, and the newest and easiest formations, tend to set the model, and become the "regular" verbs.

The primary verbs, being the most employed and the most worn down in daily use, also being drawn from more ancient sources, conserve obsolete forms, and are sometimes called "irregular"—arbitrarily and inaccurately. Actually Russian has next to no verbs that can be really termed anomalous.

Further, many "original" or "primary" verbs have consonantal stems or roots, e.g. Latin *reg-ere* to rule, *dic-ere* to say.

### § 43. THE RUSSIAN INFINITIVE.

The Russian infinitive ends in -ть and is preceded by the root in original verbs, by the stem in derivative verbs.

In some verbs -ті accented survived, e.g. нес-ті to carry.

---

\* Russian verbs in -ѣть, -ѣю, -ать, -аю, -ить, -ю may be compared with the Latin -eo, -[a]o, -io, whilst the Russian first conjugation consists of root-verbs, like the Latin third.



In some few guttural stems, the guttural and -тъ coalesce into -чь, e.g. печь to bake, for пек-тъ; жечь to burn, for жег-тъ.

In some dental roots, the dental and -тъ coalesce into -сть, e.g. вести to lead, for вед-тъ; плести to plait, for плет-тъ.

In "original" vocalic stems -тъ follows the root, e.g. зна-тъ to know.

Sometimes a consonant is extruded, e.g. жить to live, for жив-тъ.

All derivative stems are vocalic, e.g. желá-тъ to wish.

#### § 44. THE FORMS DERIVED FROM THE RUSSIAN INFINITIVE.

The -тъ termination must be removed, and the stem or root stripped.

- (1) By adding -нiе a verbal noun is formed;  
e.g. колебáть to rock, колебáнiе; вѣ́ять to blow, вѣ́янiе.
- (2) By adding -лъ the past tense is formed;  
e.g. я колебáлъ I rocked.\*
- (3) By adding -я to the present stem the present "gerundive" дѣ́ла-тъ; e.g. дѣ́лая doing.

---

\* In consonantal stems this -лъ is dropped in the masculine singular, restored in the other inflections.

E.g. *теперь* (root *тър*) to rule, past tense *тѣрь*, *тѣря* (fem.), etc.  
*лечь* (root *лєr*) to lie down, past tense *лѣгъ*, *лєгá* (fem.), etc.  
*речь* (root *рєr*) to speak, past tense *рѣтъ*, *рєклá* (fem.), etc.

But cf. for this last the Polish *rzékł*, and Čech *řekl*.

- (4) By adding -ущій, -ющій to the present stem the present participle; e.g. имѣющій possessing (имѣ-ть);\* -ящій is added with *derivative* verbs in -ить: пис-а-ть, пишущій.
- (5) By adding -въ or -вши the past gerundive; e.g. пис-а-ть to write, писавъ, писавши,† and by adding -вшій the past participle active; e.g. веселѣ-ть to enliven, веселѣ-вшій.
- (6) By adding -емый or -имый the present participle passive; e.g. купѣ-ть to buy, купѣмый; зна-ть to know, знаемый.

An easier rule is to form this from the 1st person plural present купѣмъ, знаемъ.

- (7) A perfect participle passive in т or н. т is only used in a very few verbs of certain types; e.g. двѣнуть to move, двѣнутый, послать to send, посланный sent.

*This participle is accented like the 2nd person singular present of variable verbs.*

All participles are fully declined as predicatives and determinatives.

Before proceeding to learn the verbs, the student must be sure he knows the phonetic rules in §§ 2, 5, 6, 8, 9.

It will be observed that all the forms derived from the infinitive are accented like the infinitive. There are scarcely any exceptions to this rule.

\* In older Russian the terminations were -учи, -ячи gerundive, -ущіи, -ящіи participle. Some of the latter survive as adjectives, e.g. могучіи powerful (мочь), горячіи (горѣть) hot, сидячіи sedentary. Будучи is still used as the gerundive present of быть; будущіи, the regular form, means "future."

† In consonantal roots the termination is -шии, e.g. нести to carry, нестии, неслии.

§ 45. THE FORMATIONS FROM THE 1ST PERSON  
SINGULAR PRESENT.

The *imperative* is formed from the 1st person singular present by substituting *й, ь* or *и* for *у* or *ю*.

The addition of *-те* makes this imperative form plural.

The same *-те* added to the 1st person plural makes a *hortative* mood "let us do."

The accentuation is that of the present tense.

e.g. *бѹду* I shall be, *бѹдь*, *бѹдьте*, *бѹдем-те*  
*веселѹ* I enliven, *веселѹ*, *веселѹ*

There are a very few exceptions to this general rule, viz. *бить* to beat [v. § 52 (2) *β*], *дать* to give [v. § 57, III.], *стоять* to stand [v. § 52 (3)], *бояться* to fear [v. § 52 (3)], *смѣяться* to laugh [v. § 52 (3)], *крыть\** to cover [v. § 52 (2) *ε*].

e.g. *внѣмлю* I take, *внѣмлю* *бью* I beat, *бей*  
*бою* I fear, *бой-ся* *моюсь* I wash, *мой-ся*

§ 46. THE ACCENTUATION OF THE VERB.

I. All the forms derived from the infinitive [v. § 44] have a fixed accent, that of the infinitive.

II. Except in a very few verbs the imperative has the accent of the 1st person singular present.

III. Verbs which uniformly accent the termination or the stem in every part are said to have a fixed

---

\* The exception in verbs in *-уть* is apparent only: if the *ы* be taken as a contraction of *-оѣ* or *у*, i.e. as equivalent to *-моеть*.

accent. Only a few derivatives and most of the original verbs have a variable accent.

IV. The only constant variations in the accentuation of the verb are in the present tense and the past participle passive, and forms derived from the present stem.

V. Every verb which has an infinitive of two syllables or more, and is not accented on the ultimate, has a fixed accent.

VI. In dissyllabic verbs accented on the ultimate in the infinitive, the accent *may* vary on certain inflections.

VII. A verb with a variable accent accents the infinitive and 1st person singular present alike, the 2nd and 3rd persons singular, the 1st and 2nd plural, on the penultimate; the 3rd person plural either on the ultimate or penultimate, generally the latter.

VIII. As a rule, the past participle passive has the secondary accent when the accent is variable.\*

IX. Russian verbs, original or derivative, with fixed or variable accents, are divided into four conjugations, which differ only very superficially and slightly.

e.g. **вѣдѣть** to see (rule V.).

<b>вѣжу</b>	<b>вѣдимъ</b>
<b>вѣдишь</b>	<b>вѣдите</b>
<b>вѣдитъ</b>	<b>вѣдятъ</b>

**писать** to write (rule VI.).

<b>пишѹ</b>	<b>пишемъ</b>
<b>пишешь</b>	<b>пишете</b>
<b>пишетъ</b>	<b>пишутъ</b>

---

\* Е.г. воспитать educate, воспитанный; писать write, писать, писанный.

ска́зать to tell (rule VI.).

скажу́	ска́жемъ
ска́жешь	ска́жете
ска́жетъ	ска́жутъ

не́сти to carry (invariable) (rule VI.).

несу́	несёмъ
несёшь	несёте [v. § 9 (7) (1)]
несётъ	несу́тъ

§ 47. EXAMPLES OF THE COMPLETE CONJUGATION OF  
TWO DERIVATIVE VERBS WITH FIXED ACCENTS.

<i>Infinitive :</i>	жела́ть to wish	вѣри́ть to believe
<i>Verbal noun :</i>	жела́ніе	[вѣреніе] *
<i>Present gerundive :</i>	жела́я	вѣря́
<i>Present part. act. :</i>	жела́ющій	вѣря́щій
<i>Past gerundive act. :</i>	жела́въ, жела́вши	вѣривъ, вѣривши
<i>Past part. act. :</i>	жела́вшій	вѣривші́й
<i>Present part. pass. :</i>	жела́емый	вѣримы́й †
<i>Past part. pass. :</i>	жела́нный	-вѣренны́й
<i>Present :</i>	я жела́ю	вѣрю
	ты жела́ешь	вѣришь
онъ, она́, оно́	жела́етъ	вѣритъ
	мы жела́емъ	вѣримъ
	вы жела́ете	вѣрите
	они́, онѣ́	жела́ютъ
		вѣрятъ
<i>Past :</i>	я, ты жела́лъ, жела́ла	вѣрилъ, вѣрила
	онъ, она́, оно́	{ жела́лъ, жела́ла, жела́ло
		{ вѣрилъ, вѣрила, вѣрило
	мы, вы, они́, онѣ́	жела́ли, вѣрили

\* Replaced by вѣрованіе, from вѣровать.

† Rare.

<i>Future:</i>	бѹду	} желѣть	бѹдемъ	} желѣть	
	бѹдешъ		бѹдете		вѣрить
	бѹдетъ		бѹдутъ		вѣрять

<i>Imperative:</i>	2nd pers. sing.	желѣй	вѣрь
	2nd pers. pl.	желѣйте	вѣрьте

*Unless specially mentioned, all the parts of the Russian verb are simply and regularly formed as in these two paradigms.*

#### § 48. THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS.

##### *Some Phonetic Rules.*

Before entering on this section, reperuse § 5, § 6, § 8, § 9.

*Remember.*—Words in -е-ре-, -о-ро-, -е-ле-, -о-ло-, though now dissyllables, represent monosyllabic roots in -ре-, -ра-, -ле-, -ла-.

*Remember*—

г + е makes же г + и makes жи г + ю makes жу  
And similarly with к and х (changing to ч and ш).

*Remember*—

т + ю makes in Russian чѹ, in Church Slavonic шѹ.

д + ю makes in Russian жу, in Church Slavonic жѹ.

т + я can make in Russian ча, and in Church Slavonic  
ща or remain.

т + е or и can make че, чи or remain.

д + е or и can make же, жи or remain.

д + я can make жа or remain.

When the dental remains, it is due to the influence of the written language.

*Remember*—к, г + -тъ are changed to -чъ; but т or д + тѣ to -сѣ, and the ending -сѣ is extended to other roots by false analogy.

*Remember*—з + я becomes жа or remains.

с + я becomes ша or remains.

с + ю becomes шу

з + ю becomes жу

ст + ю becomes шу

*Remember*.—The euphonic insertion of я after labial roots before ю, and -енный.

Before other soft vowels с, з and ст as a rule are merely softened in pronunciation, not changed in quality. [v. § 5 (4).]

#### § 49. THE FIRST CONJUGATION.

At the head of § 42 there is printed a scheme of the four conjugations.

The first conjugation forms its present in -у, -ешь, -етъ, -емъ, -ете, -утъ, added directly on to the root, without any intermediate vowel.

It comprises the following classes:—

I. *Guttural Roots*.—Infinitive in -чь; e.g. печь to bake, лечь to lie down, мочь to be able.

e.g. печь to bake (root пек) жечь to burn (root жг)

*Past part. act.*: пёкшій жёгшій

*Gerundive*: печá жёгши

*Present part. act.*: пекúщій жгúщій

*Past part. pass.*: печённый жжённый

*Present*: пекú печёмъ жгу жжёмъ

печёшь печёте жжёшь жжете

печётъ пекúтъ жжётъ жгутъ

*Past*: пёкъ, пеклá, пеклó, пекли; жёгъ, жглá, жглó, жгли

*Imperative*: пеки; жги

Similarly:—

речь to speak (root *pek*)—this verb is obsolete.

лечь to lie down (irregular present stem *лягу*,

*ляжешь, лягутъ*; but past *лёгъ, легла́, легло́,*

*легли́*); imperative *лягъ*

мочь to be able (root *mor*)

*Note.*—мочь makes *могú, можешь, можетъ, можемъ, можете, могутъ*; imperative *моги́*, etc.

Similarly:—

вечь to draw (root *влек*)

сечь to cut (root *сѣк*)

беречь to shelter (root *берег*, present *берегú,*

*бережешь . . . берегутъ*, past *берёгъ,*

*берегла́, берегло́, берегли́*)

стеречь to guard (root *стерег*, like *беречь*)

стричься to have the hair cut (root *стриг*)\*

течь to flow (root *тек*)

запрячь to yoke (root *пряг*: note the past

*запрёгъ*, sounded *прыòk, priglá, -ló, -lí*)

волочь to drag (root *волок*)

*Practically all of these have a fixed accent on the termination.*

## II. Nasal Roots.—Infinitive in -ять (-ать after ж, ч, etc.).

*Remember.*—The Russian я represents the Old Slav *ę* (French *aim, in, in faim, fin*); and the nasal lost in some forms is restored in fuller inflections; cf. *врѣмя, врѣмени*. [v. § 2 (2).]

e.g. *начать* to begin (root *чън*); cf. imperfective

*начинать*

---

\* Note past participle passive *остри́женный*.



The present gerundive and participle *начая* and *нача́ющіи* do not exist, as the verb is perfective and has no present tense; only the past active participles *начавъ*, *нача́вшии*.

But note *past part. pass.* *начатыи*, or *начато́и*.

*Present* (with future meaning):—

начну́	начнёмъ
начнёшь	начнёте
начнётъ	начну́тъ

*Past*: *нача́лъ*, *нача́ла*, *нача́ло*, *нача́ли*

*Imperative*: *начни́*

*Verbs of this class take the past passive participle in т, and mostly throw the accent back on the past tense in -лѣ and the participle in т. Otherwise the accent is always on the termination.*

Such are:—*жать* (*жму*) to press (root *жѣм*); *жать* (*жну*) to reap (root *жѣн*), *чать* (root *чѣн*); only used in compounds, e.g. *начина́тъ* begin, *сочиня́тъ* compose; *пя́ть* (*пну*, root *пѣн*), mostly used in compounds, e.g. *распа́тъ* to crucify.

*Verbs of this class take the verbal substantive in -іе (as also do the liquid roots, v. infra).*

e.g. *распа́іе* the crucifixion

*пона́іе* the meaning (of a passage)

There is one other such verb (with a nasal root) of great consequence, only used in compounds, viz. *-ять* (root *ем*, Latin *emere*) to take.

In compounds, as with the 3rd person pronoun [v. § 41, V. (2)], *и* is prefixed to the root.

e.g. нанять to hire, принять accept, понять to understand, занять to occupy (oneself) or to lend, взять to take up, снять to take away; all in the imperfective, нанимать, принимать, etc.; all having a past participle passive, нанятъ, занятъ, etc.

The present restores the original root -емъ.

e.g. наймѹ, наймѣшь, etc., поймѹ, возьмѹ, займѹ, etc.

There also exists a perfective present form in ёмлю, внемлю, внемлѣшь, conjugated like a verb with fixed accent of the third conjugation, but with an imperative accented внемли.

### III. Sibilant Roots.

These are :—

нести to carry (root нес)  
 везти to drive (e.g. in a carriage) (root вез)  
 грызть to gnaw (root грыз)  
 лѣзть to climb (root лѣз)  
 ползти to creep (root полз)  
 пасты to graze (transitive) (root паст)

Example :—

*Infinitive* : везти

*Gerundive present* : вези

*Participle present* : везущій

*Gerundive past* : вёвши

*Past participle passive* : везённый

*Verbal, derived from imperfective* : -вожéние

*Present* : везѹ, везѣшь, etc.

*Past* : вѣзъ, везла́, -ло́, -ли́

*Imperative* : вези́

*Notice.*—лѣзть has a present лѣзу, лѣзешь, etc., лѣзуть; imperative лѣзь.

IV. *Roots in Liquids* : -ере-, -оро-, -еле-, -оло-.

- (1) e.g. терѣть to rub (root тѣр, imperf. тира́ть)  
 -мерѣть to die (root мѣр, imperf. -мира́ть)  
 перѣть to prop (root пѣр, imperf. пира́ть)

Example :—

*Infinitive* : терѣть

*Verbal* : трѣніе\*

*Past part. pass.* : трѣтъ, like the roots in nasals

*Present gerundive act.* : трѹщи

*Present part. act.* : трѹщій

*Past part. act.* : трѣтый

*Present* : трѹ, трѣшь, трѣтъ, трѣмъ, трѣте, трѹтъ

*Past* : трѣъ, трѣла, -ло, -ли

Like the roots in nasals, the verbal noun and past participle passive are formed with т, and the past tense and past participle passive throw the accent back on to the particle with which they are compounded.

e.g. ѹмерѣ, умерла́, ѹмерло, ѹмерли (умерѣть)

So, too, подперѣ (but -пѣръ) to prop.

- (2) борѣтъ to fight†                      колѣтъ to weed  
 порѣтъ to rend                              молѣтъ to grind  
 колѣтъ to pierce

колѣтъ to pierce.

*Present part. act.* : колющій

*Past part. act.* : колѣвшій

*Verbal noun* : колѣтье

*Past part. pass.* : колѣтъ

*Present part. pass.* : колемый

*Present* (following the third conjugation) : колю́,  
 ко́лешь, ко́леть, ко́лемъ, ко́лете, ко́лютъ

*Past* : колѣ́лъ, колѣ́ла, колѣ́ло, колѣ́ли

\* трѣіе is disused.

† Used with -ся, omitted in example,

These five verbs differ slightly from the verbs in -ерѣть, -елѣть.

- (a) The present as in the third conjugation.
- (β) A uniformly variable accent. [v. § 46.]
- (γ) A regular vocalic past tense with fixed accent.
- (δ) молотъ is *irregular* in forming its present: мелю́, мелѣшь, мелѣть, мелѣмъ, мелѣте, мелю́тъ, as though from an infinitive мелѣть.

#### V. Roots in Dental.

- e.g. вести́ to lead (root вед)
- гнесті́ to press (root гнет)
- цвѣсті́ to bloom (root цвѣт), but v. § 9 (7) (3)
- класть to lay (root клад)
- красть to steal (root крад)
- (крадѹ́, кра́деный)
- пасть to fall (root пад)
- прясть to spin (root пряд)
- сѣсть to sit (сѣдѹ́, сѣдѣшь)
- расті́ to grow (root раст: растѹ́, etc.; past tense росъ)
- честъ to read (root чыт)
- идті́ to go (root ыд)

and by false analogy—

- скрестъ to scrape (root скреб: скребѹ́, скребѣшь—скрѣбѹ́)
- грестъ to row (root грѣб: грѣбѹ́, грѣбѣшь, грѣбѹ́)
- клясть to swear (root клян: клянѹ́, клянѣшь—клянѣ́)

These verbs form the past in лѣ added on to the vowel of the infinitive, the real root being disregarded.

- e.g. вѣлѣ́, велѣ́а, велѣ́о, велѣ́и
- So гнѣлѣ́, цвѣлѣ́а, клалѣ́

Exceptions, грестъ and скрестъ: грѣбъ, грѣблѣ, грѣблѣи; скрѣбъ, скрѣблѣ, скрѣблѣи; and растѣи (root раст), растѣу, растѣшь, рос -ѣ, -лѣ, -лѣо, -лѣи.

честъ and идѣи follow slightly different rules.

*Present*: идѣу (in compounds йду, e.g. найду I shall find, etc.), идѣшь, идѣтъ, идѣмъ, идѣте, идѣтъ

*Past* (from root шед): шѣлъ, шѣлѣ, шѣлѣи

*Participles and gerundives*: идѣи, идѣщій, шѣдшій

честъ (only used in compounds, root чыг)

*Present*: -чыгу, -чытѣшь, -чытѣтъ

*Past*: -чыгѣлъ, -чыгѣлѣ, -чыгѣлѣи

*Verbal noun*: -чтѣніе

*Participles and gerundives*: -чтя, -чтѣщій, -чтѣвшій, -чтѣнный

сѣсть has a present сѣду accented uniformly like лечь, лѣгу. красть accents the present крадѣу, крадѣшь, etc.

With these variations, one example will explain all these verbs.

красть to steal

*Present gerundive active*: крадѣи

*Present participle active*: крадѣщій

*Past participle active*: крадѣшій

*Past participle passive*: крадѣнъ, крадѣнный

*Present*: крадѣу, -ѣшь, -ѣтъ, -ѣмъ, -ѣте, -ѣтъ

*Imperative*: крадѣи

All these forms use the real root of the verb in the present forms.

*Past*: крадѣлъ, крадѣлѣ, крадѣло, крадѣли

So, too, сѣлъ, сѣлѣ, сѣло, сѣли

For the accentuation of the past tense in its inflections, as a rule, monosyllables derived from verbs which accent the terminations throw the accent forward.

e.g. **лѣгъ**, **лєгá**, **лєгáо**, **лєгáи**

**палъ\*** (**пастъ**) and **сѣлъ** (**сѣсть**) have a fixed accent, influenced by the derivative parts from verbs in -ать and -ѣть.

Forms such as **вѣлъ**, **плѣлъ** (**вєстѣи**, **плєстѣи**) throw the accent forward like **лѣгъ**, **росъ**; so, too, **клялъ** (**клясть**, **клянѹ**), **кралъ** (**красть**).

*Except* in original verbs, mostly monosyllabic, the past tense, or rather the participle in -л, never shifts the accent.

VI. *Roots in в.* These are three in number.

**жить** to live

**плыть** to swim

**слыть** to have a reputation of (Greek *κλύειν*)

e.g. **онъ слывѣтъ мѹдрыиъ** he is thought wise.

One example illustrates all three.

**жить** to live .

*Verbal noun* : **житіє** and **житьє**

*Past participle passive* : **-жѣтый**

*Gerundive present active* : **живѣи**

*Participle present active* : **живѹщій** (but older form, used adjectivally, **живѹчій**)

*Gerundive past active* : **жѣвши**, **живѣ**

*Participle past active* : **жѣвшій**

*Present* : **живѹ**, **живѣшь** . . . **живѹтъ**

*Past* : **жилъ**, **жилá**, **жилó**, **жили**

---

\* Cf. Polish *padł*.

VII. *Consonantal roots with a suffical vowel a.*

e.g. **врать** to speak at random, or lie  
**лгать** to lie (tell falsehoods)  
**брать** to take (iterative -**бирать**)  
**ждать** to wait (iterative -**ждать**)  
**рвать** to tear  
**спать** to sleep  
**ржать** to neigh  
**драть** to tear (present **деру́**)  
**звать** to call (present **зову́**)

Examples:—

	<b>рвать</b> to tear	<b>драть</b> to tear
<i>Verbal noun:</i>	<b>рва́ние</b>	<b>дра́нѣ</b> *
<i>Past part. pass.:</i>	<b>рванъ</b>	<b>дранъ</b>
<i>Gerundive pres. act.:</i>	<b>рвѣ</b>	<b>дрѣ</b>
<i>Participle pres. act.:</i>	<b>рву́щий</b>	<b>деру́щий</b>
<i>Past part. act.:</i>	<b>рва́вший</b>	<b>дра́вший</b>
<i>Present:</i>	<b>рву, рвѣшь, рвѣтъ,</b>	<b>деру́, дерѣшь, дерѣтъ</b>
	<b>рвѣмъ, рвѣте, рвутъ</b>	<b>дерѣмъ, дерѣте, дерутъ</b>
<i>Past:</i>	<b>рвалъ, рвала, рвало,</b>	<b>дралъ, драла, драло,</b>
	<b>рвали</b>	<b>драли</b>
<b>So, too, лгать, лжѣшь, etc.</b>	<b>So, too, брать, беру́ ;</b>	
	<b>звать, зову́</b>	

There are many similar forms in the third conjugation, monosyllabic and dissyllabic, e.g. **знать** to know, **спать** to sleep, **писа́ть** to write. [v. § 51 (3).]

---

\* Irregular accentuation.

## § 50. THE SECOND CONJUGATION.

The first conjugation consists of consonantal roots attached directly to the terminations. This involves phonological difficulties, and slightly complicates the accentuation and appearance of the forms.

The second conjugation is composed of roots with a vocalic suffix, and thus greater apparent regularity is secured.

The marks of the second conjugation are: infinitive, -нуть; present, -ну, -нешь, -нетъ, -немъ, -нете, -нутъ, or, accented, -нѹ, -нѣшь, -нѣтъ, -нѣмъ, -нѣте, -нѹтъ.

The present forms are therefore identical with those of the first conjugation, save for the prefixing of the н.

This conjugation falls under two main heads, which must be carefully distinguished.

I. Perfective verbs conserving the “ну” suffix throughout all the forms of verb, and mostly accented like the imperfective verb from which they are derived. These verbs [v. § 59, I. (2)] as perfectives have a peculiar meaning of instantaneity—of doing an action once and suddenly. The suffixal vowel of the imperfective verb is dropped, and sometimes the last consonant of the root as well, to avoid heavy combinations of the consonants.

e.g. вертѣть	to turn	вернѹтъ
стергать	to quilt	стегнѹтъ
порхѣть	to flutter	порхнѹтъ
махѣть	to wave	махнѹтъ
двѣгать	to move	двинѹтъ



e.g. дѣргать	to pull	дѣрнуть
тѣргать	to touch	тѣрнуть
лѣпать	to split	лѣпнуть
тонѣть	to sink	тонуть* to drown
тѣгивать	to drag	тянуть* to pull
касѣться	to concern	коснуться
шептѣть	to whisper	шепнуть

There are some exceptions to this rule of accentuation.

e.g. глядѣть	to look at	глянуть
кидѣть	to leave	кинуть
чѣрпать	to take in water (of a ship)	чѣрпнуть
зѣѣть	to gape	-зѣннуть
кричѣть	to cry	крикнуть

*Note*, however, compounds in глянуть have a *variable* accent.

e.g. заглянѣть, загляну́, заглянешь, etc.

## II. Verbs in -нуть, imperfective and intransitive.

In the past tense the simple root is used, with no suffixal vowel between the last consonant and ѣ, which latter, as in the first conjugation, drops in the masculine singular.

These verbs are distinguished from ordinary imperfectives by having the special *inchoative* meaning of "becoming."

---

\* With variable accent тонѣшь, тѣнешь, тѣнутый.

These verbs are nearly all accented on the penultimate.

- e.g. слѣпнуть to become blind  
 сохнуть to become dry  
 чахнуть to die gradually, or wither  
 стыннуть to cool  
 гнѣбнуть (гнѣбать) to decay  
 тихнуть to become quiet

In this class a few verbs have the past tense in -нуль.

- e.g. липнуть to adhere, липнуль; -снуť (mostly used in compounds, e.g. заснуť, проснуť) to sleep, -снуль (as the perfective of засыпать, etc.)

The present runs -сну, -снешь . . . снутъ.\*

### III. Examples of conjugation in both varieties.

	Perfective and Transitive. кинуть to cast off	Imperf. and Intrans. гнѣбнуть to decay
<i>Infinitive :</i>	кѣнуть	гнѣбнуть
<i>Verbal noun :</i>	(кѣнутіе)	none
<i>Past part. pass. :</i>	кѣнутый (in т not н)	none
<i>Present part. act. :</i>	none	гнѣбущій
<i>Present gerundive act. :</i>	none	гнѣбущи
<i>Past gerundive act. :</i>	кѣнувши	гнѣбнувши
<i>Past part. act. :</i>	кѣнувшій	гнѣбнувшій
<i>Present part. pass. :</i>	none	none
<i>Present :</i>	кѣну, кѣнешь, кѣнетъ, кѣнемъ, кѣнете, кѣнутъ	гнѣбу, гнѣбнешь, гнѣбеть, гнѣбемъ, гнѣбете, гнѣбнутъ
<i>Past :</i>	кѣнуль, кѣнула, кѣнуло, кѣнули	гнѣбъ, гнѣбла гнѣбло, гнѣбли
<i>Imperative :</i>	кинь	гнѣбъ

\* Cf. the noun сонъ, сна.

## § 51. THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

*Preliminary.*

The characteristic of this conjugation is the present in -ю, -ешь, -етъ, -емъ, -ете, -ютъ.

This conjugation comprises a number of primary original verbs, mostly monosyllables, and vocalic roots (thereby distinct from those in the first conjugation); a few consonantal roots also exist.

It comprises the enormous and increasing number of regular derivatives in -ѣть; the derivative verbs in -ать and -яъ, which is the commonest form, and the large class of verbs in -овать, -евать, together with the iteratives in -ывать, -ивать.

Thus, this conjugation perhaps embraces the majority of Russian verbs.

An example of a simple regular verb in -ать is to be found at § 47.

Verbs in -ѣть are precisely the same, e.g. зеленѣть to become green, the stem зеленѣ- being substituted for the stem желѣ-.

## § 52. THE ORIGINAL VERBS OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

I. Those in which the terminations are directly affixed to the root.

(1) *Liquid roots in -олоть, -ороть.*

These have been explained in § 49, IV. (2).

(2) *Vocalic roots*.—(a) Roots in а.

e.g. зна-ть to know

This is conjugated exactly like желать [v. § 47].

So, too, сия-ть to shine (сияю).

## (β) Roots in и.

e.g. бить to beat    лить to flow    шить to sew  
 вить to wind    брить to shave    гнить to rot

All of these form the *past participle passive* in -тъ.

e.g. битъ, вить, лить, etc.

The *verbal nouns* are formed either in -нтіе or -ѣніе.

e.g. битѣ, біеніе, гніеніе, etc.

The present tense is formed:—

бую, бѣшь, бѣтъ, бѣмъ, бѣте, буютъ

So, too, шью, гнию, лью, вью, etc.

But брить, брѣю, брѣешь, брѣетъ, брѣемъ, брѣете, брѣютъ.

The other forms present no variance; e.g. бѣя,  
 бѣющій, бѣвшій, билъ (біла, біло, біли), бей (imperative).  
 [v. § 45.]

## (γ) Roots in у.

e.g. дуть to blow    обуть to put on [shoes]

These are quite regular, the root being ду, обѣ.

e.g. дѣю, дѣешь . . . дѣютъ, дѣй

дѣя, дѣющій, дѣвшій, дѣлъ

The verbal noun and past participle passive are  
 in т, дутѣ, обѣтіе, дуть, обѣтъ.

## (δ) Roots in ѣ.

смѣть to dare\*    грѣть to warm  
 успѣть to succeed

---

\* Not to be confused with смѣяться laugh. [v. § 52, I. (β).]

There are very few original verbs of this type; they are all regularly conjugated like the derivatives in -ѣть, or like желáю [v. § 47], substituting the root in ж for желá-.

They are all accented throughout on the root-vowel ж; e.g. смѣю, грѣѣть, успѣѣть. For -дѣть dress, v. § 57, II.

For пѣть, v. following sub-section (ε).

(ε) Verbs in -ыть.

[For быть to be, v. § 57, II. This verb is anomalous, forming its parts—as in nearly all Indo-European languages—out of several separate roots.]

e.g. крыть to cover, мыть to wash, выть to howl, рыть to dig, ныть to be injured, and пѣть to sing, which accents the termination; пою, поёшь, поёть, поёмъ, поёте, поютъ.

ы fully accented is sounded almost as a diphthong *ii*, and крыть may be taken as an abbreviated form of крёеть. One example will illustrate them all.

*Infinitive*: крыть

*Verbal noun*: крытіе\*

*Past participle pass.*: крытъ\*

*Past participle act.*: крѣвшій

*Past gerundive act.*: крѣвъ, крѣвши

*Past*: крѣлъ, крѣла, крѣло, крѣли

*Present*: крѣю, крѣёшь, крѣетъ, крѣемъ, крѣете, крѣютъ

*Present participle pass.*: крѣемый

*Imperative*: крѣй, крѣйте

---

\* From §§ 49 I., II., IV., VI., § 50, § 52, I. (2) (8) (γ) (ε), it will be seen that most of the primitive root-verbs, consonantal and vocalic, have the past participle passive in т and not in н.

II. Verbs with an infinitive in -ать, -ять; but affixing the root directly on to the terminations of the present tense.

Of these verbs there is an immense number. Some instances can be given. Otherwise they are conjugated like *желаю* or *дѣлаю*.

		Present.	Accentuation.
таять	to thaw	таю	fixed
лаять	to bark	лаю	"
капать	to trickle	каплю (капаю)	"
мазать	to anoint	мажу	"
рѣзать	to cut	рѣжу	"
чуять	to hear	чую	"
прятать	to hide	прячу	"
вѣять	to wave	вѣю	"
орать	to plough	орю	"
надѣяться	to hope	надѣюсь	"
плакать	to weep	плачу	"
двигать	to move	двигаю (двигаю)	"
писать	to write	пишѹ, but пишешь, variable пишутѹ, and писанный	"
смѣяться	to laugh	смѣюсь	invariable
вязать	to bind	вяжѹ	variable
дремать	to sleep	дремлю	"
шептать	to whisper	шепчѹ	"
сказать	to say	скажѹ	"
лепетать	to stammer	лепечѹ	"

Nearly all the verbs of this class accented on the last syllable have a shifting accent, like that of *писать*.

*Notice.*—(1) *стенать*, to groan, has mixed forms: *стенаю*, *стенаешь*, etc., or *стоню*, *стѡнешь*, etc.; past *стеналъ* or *стѡналъ*.

- (2) колебáть to rock, колебáю or колебáю, колеблешь or колебáешь, etc.
- (3) слáть to send, шлю, шлѣшь, шлѣтъ, шлѣте, шлютъ (imperfective -сылáть).
- (4) стлáть to spread, стелю́, стелѣшь, etc., стелю́тъ ; раст стлалъ, стлалá, стлáло, стлáли.
- (5) дыхáть to breathe, дышú, дышешь, дышутъ or дыхáю, дыхáешь, etc., in compounds.
- (6) страдáть to suffer, стра́жду or страдáю in the 1st person ; otherwise страдáю, страдáешь, etc. стра́жду is a Church Slavonic form, the true Russian would have been стра́жу.

### § 53. THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

#### *The Derivative Verbs.*

There are three forms of derivatives in the third conjugation :—

(1) With the infinitive in -ать or -ять, and stem in -а-, -я-, mostly derived from nouns, and conserving fixedly the accent of the noun. These are mostly transitive.

e.g. дѣло thing	дѣлать to do
рабо́та work	рабо́тать to work
печа́ть printing	печа́тать to print
любе́зникъ courtier	любе́зничать to court

There are *very* few exceptions to this rule of the uniformity of accentuation of noun and verb.

e.g. хворы́й ill	хворáть to be ill
ла́ска affection	ласка́ть to dandle

(2) With the infinitive in -ѣть *accented*, intransitive, and with an inceptive and imperfective meaning.

e.g. <i>зеле<sup>н</sup>ѣть</i>	to become green	(зеле <sup>н</sup> ый)
<i>бог<sup>а</sup>тъ</i>	to become rich	(бог <sup>а</sup> тый)
<i>жел<sup>т</sup>ѣть</i>	to become yellow	(жел <sup>т</sup> ый)
<i>слаб<sup>ѣ</sup>ть</i>	to become weak	(слаб <sup>ѣ</sup> ый)
<i>муж<sup>а</sup>ть</i>	to become a man	(муж <sup>а</sup> )

*Remember*—ж, ш, ч, щ + ѣ in Russian make жа, ша, ча, ща. [v. §§ 37 and 2 (3).]

These derivatives in -ѣть are all oxytone. Except:—

(a) A few words, e.g. *угрюмый* severe, *угрюмѣть*.

(β) In accordance with the same principle of conserving the accent of the noun or adjective all inceptives in -ѣть, from adjectives in -авый, -ивый, -овый, -атый, retain the adjectival accent.

e.g. <i>крова<sup>в</sup>ѣть</i>	to become bloody
<i>милостив<sup>ѣ</sup>ть</i>	to become merciful
<i>косма<sup>т</sup>ѣть</i>	to become shaggy
<i>безлю<sup>д</sup>ѣть</i>	to be depopulated (безъ лю <sup>д</sup> ей)
<i>обезпа<sup>м</sup>ятѣть</i>	to lose memory (безъ па <sup>м</sup> яти)

*For full model of conjugation of these derivatives, all of which have a fixed accent, v. § 47; жел<sup>а</sup>ть.*

(3) I. *Derivatives in -овать, -евать, e.g. ч<sup>у</sup>вствовать from ч<sup>у</sup>ство feeling.*

<i>Infinitive :</i>	ч <sup>у</sup> вствовать	горев <sup>а</sup> ть
<i>Verbal noun :</i>	ч <sup>у</sup> вствованіе	горев <sup>а</sup> ніе
<i>Past part. pass. :</i>	—	—
<i>„ger. and part. act. :</i>	ч <sup>у</sup> ствовавший, -ши	горев <sup>а</sup> вший, -ши
<i>Past :</i>	ч <sup>у</sup> ствовалъ	горев <sup>а</sup> лъ
<i>Present :</i>	ч <sup>у</sup> ствую, -ешь, etc.	горюю, -ешь, etc.
<i>Present part. act. :</i>	ч <sup>у</sup> ствующій	горющій
<i>Present gerundive :</i>	ч <sup>у</sup> ствуя	горюя
<i>Imperative :</i>	ч <sup>у</sup> ствуй	горюй



*The accent on these derivatives is fixed, mostly, on the syllable accented in the noun or adjective from which they are derived. But in the present, and those forms derived from it, -ов, -ев changes to -у, which is accented, when the infinitive is oxytone.*

e.g. **вѣра, вѣровать** to believe  
**жѣртва, жѣртву, жѣртовать** to sacrifice  
**бесѣда, бесѣдовать** to converse  
**варваръ, варварствовать** to be barbarous  
**существо а "being," существовать** to exist  
**вой-на, воевать** to war

The foreign loan-words in -ировать. These if quadrisyllabic accent **ировать**; if pentasyllabic, or beyond, **ировать**.

e.g. **акклиматизировать** to acclimatize  
 [but **характеризировать** to characterize]  
**аплодировать** to applaud  
**цивилизировать** to civilize, etc.

*But notice*—**здоровый** healthy, **здороваться**; **здоровуюсь** to greet. This is really a derivative from the adjective. [v. § 53 (1).]

II. There are a few *original* verbs in -овать, -евать, which really belong to § 52; but, as they are exactly like the derivatives, may be more conveniently treated here.

They all accent in the same way:—

e.g. <b>ковать</b>	to forge	<b>кую, куёшь</b>	fixed accent
<b>основать</b>	to found	<b>осную, оснуёшь</b>	„ „
<b>совать</b>	to thrust	<b>сую</b>	„ „
<b>клевать</b>	to nibble	<b>клюю</b>	„ „
<b>жевать</b>	to chew	<b>жую</b>	„ „

(4) *Iteratives in -ать, -ить.*

There is one aspect of the Russian called *iterative* or *frequentative*, signifying habitual or repeated action.

One form of this is an inflection in -ать, -ить, -аю, -ию.

e.g. *двигать* to move, perfective *двигну* [v. § 52 (3)]

*двигать* to move, iterative *двигаю*

*начать* to begin, perfective *начну* [v. § 49 (2)]

*начинать* to begin, imperfective

Other examples will be given in the section on the aspects. [v. § 59 (4).]

The conjugation is regular, like *желаю* [v. § 47].

(5) *Iteratives in -ывать, -ивать.*

(a) Where the root of the verb is vocalic, in -вать.

e.g. <i>дать</i>	to give	<i>давать</i>
<i>быть</i>	to be	<i>бывать</i>
<i>стать</i>	to become	<i>-ставать</i>
<i>обуться</i>	to be shod (perf.)	<i>обуваться</i>

(β) Where the verb is dissyllabic, or the root consonantal in -ывать, -ивать, *with the accent on the root.*

e.g. <i>писать</i>	to write	<i>писывать</i>
<i>звать</i>	to call	<i>зывать</i> [v. § 49, VII.] and <i>-зывать</i>
<i>торговать</i>	to trade	<i>торговывать</i>
<i>играть</i>	to play	<i>игрывать</i>
<i>ходить</i>	to go	<i>хаживать</i>
<i>говорить</i>	to speak	<i>говаривать</i>

For other instances, v. § 59, I. (4).

These forms are conjugated regularly with a fixed accent; e.g. *бываю, пишу, говорю*, like *желаю* [v. § 47].

*Observe.*—**дава́ть** (from **да́ть**) forms its present like **кова́ть** [v. § 53 (3) II.], **даю́**, **даёшь**, **даётъ**, etc. Similarly **-става́ть** has **-стаю́**, **-стаёшь**, etc., and **-знава́ть** (from **зна́ть** to know), **-знаю́**, **-знаёшь**, etc.

#### § 54. THE FOURTH CONJUGATION.

##### *Preliminary.*

The fourth conjugation consists mainly of derivative verbs with fixed accentuation.

The infinitive is in **-ѣть** for a few very common original verbs, and in **-ать**, **-ять** in four others: **гна́ть** to drive, **спать** to sleep, **сто́ять** to be worth (connected with **ста́ть** to stand), and **бо́яться** to fear.

Otherwise the infinitive is in **-ить**, and the present terminations **-ю**, **-ишь**, **-итъ**, **-имъ**, **-ите**, **-ять** are added *directly* to the root or stem, the thematic vowel **и** only occurring in the infinitive and forms thence derived. For a complete paradigm of the derivative verb, v. § 47, **вѣ́рить**, and cf. §§ 44 and 45.

The derivative verbs of the fourth conjugation are mostly transitive, and often causative.

e.g. **сла́бъ** weak, **слабѣ́ть** to become weak, **сла́бить** to make weak

**ста́ръ** old, **старѣ́ть** to become old, **ста́рить** to make old

**бога́тъ** rich, **богате́ть** to become rich, **бога́тить** to enrich

**ле́дяно́й** (from **ле́дь** ice), **леде́нѣть** to freeze (intransitive), **леде́вить** to freeze (transitive)

When derived from verbs, forms in **-ять** are usually

the imperfectives of primitive verbs of the first conjugation.

e.g. нести́	to carry	носите́
везти́	to carry	возите́
вести́	to lead	водят́
лечь	to lie	ложите́ to lay
		лежат́ to lie (intrans.)

Generally speaking, these derivative verbs accent the termination throughout; there are many exceptions, some of which are detailed in § 56.

### § 55. THE FOURTH CONJUGATION.

#### *Original Verbs.*

#### I. Verbs in -ать, -ять.

	гнать	стоять	спать
	to drive	to stand	to sleep
<i>Verbal noun :</i>	гна́ние	сто́яние	—
<i>Past part. pass. :</i>	гна́нный	—	—
<i>Gerundive present :</i>	гна́я	сто́я	—
<i>Present part. :</i>	гна́щий	сто́ящий	спа́щий
<i>Gerundive past :</i>	гна́въ	сто́явъ	—
	гна́вши	сто́явши	спа́вши
<i>Present :</i>	гна́ю	сто́ю	спа́ю
	гна́ишь	сто́ишь	спи́шь
	гна́ить	сто́ить	спи́ть
	гна́имъ	сто́имъ	спи́мъ
	гна́ите	сто́ите	спи́те
	гна́ять	сто́ять	спа́ть
<i>Imperative :</i>	гна́й	сто́й	спи́
<i>Past :</i>	гна́лъ	сто́ялъ	спа́лъ
<i>Present part. pass. :</i>	гна́емый	—	—

бо́аться, to fear, is conjugated like сто́ять; the imperative is бо́йся.

## II. Verbs in -ѣть.

*Roots terminating in ш, ж, ч change ѣ to а ;*  
e.g. лежа́ть. Cf. § 37 and § 53 (2), and § 2 (3).

These verbs mostly have a fixed accent on the terminations.

e.g. гори́ть to burn, горю́, гори́шь . . . гори́тъ  
 шуми́ть to be noisy, шумлю́, шуми́шь, шуми́тъ  
 ле́тъ to fly, лечу́, ле́тишь, ле́титъ  
 сидѣ́ть\* to sit, сижу́, сиди́шь, сиди́тъ  
 дрожа́ть to tremble, дрожу́, дрожи́шь, дрожа́тъ  
 крича́ть to cry, кричу́, кричи́шь, крича́тъ  
 лежа́ть to lie, лежу́, лежи́шь, лежа́тъ\*  
 сту́чать to knock, стучу́, сту́чатъ  
 молча́ть\* to be silent, молчу́, молча́тъ  
 бо́лѣть (impersonal), боли́тъ, боля́тъ  
 ве́лѣть† to command, велю́, вели́шь  
 глядѣ́ть\* to look at, гляжу́, гляжи́шь, etc.

Some have a moveable accent.

e.g. смотре́ть to look at, смотрю́, смотре́ишь . . .  
 смотре́ть, смотре́ишь, -смотре́нный  
 терпе́ть to endure, терплю́, терпи́шь . . . терпе́ть  
 (but терпи́мый, терпе́нный)  
 держа́ть to hold, держу́, держи́шь . . . держа́тъ  
 (past part. pass. держа́нный)

---

\* Present gerundive сидя́, лёжа́, молча́, глядя́.

† Takes the dative.

дыша́ть to breathe, дышѹ́, ды́шишь, ды́шатъ  
(Also a secondary form, дыха́ть, дышѹ́, ды́шешь,  
ды́шутъ in the third conjugation)

люби́ть to love, люблю́, люби́шь . . . любя́тъ,  
любя́щий, любя́мый

вертѣ́тъ, to turn, usually has a fixed accent on the termination; верти́шь, верти́тъ, вертя́тъ are also found.

висѣ́тъ to hang (intransitive) has a fixed accent; but in compounds accents the root, e.g. зави́сѣтъ.

A few are accented fixedly on the root.

e.g. слы́шать, слы́шу, слы́шать, etc., to hear  
ви́дѣтъ, ви́жу, ви́дятъ to see

*As a rough guide* it may be stated that verbs of the fourth conjugation with the infinitive in -ѣтъ, if intransitive have a fixed accent, if transitive have a moveable accent.

*Note.*—плати́тъ, to pay (плачу́, пла́тишь, пла́тятъ, пла́ченный), must be distinguished from пла́кать, пла́чу to weep; пла́тишь . . . пла́тятъ, to pay, is sometimes written, and commonly sounded плѣтишь . . . плѣтятъ.

The past tense of this conjugation ends in -ѣлъ, -аъ, accented like the infinitive.

In this class the irregular verbs хоте́тъ to wish, and бѣжа́тъ to run, must be included. бѣжа́тъ has two irregular forms, бѣгѹ́ I run, бѣгѹ́тъ they run, and derivative forms. смотре́тъ, to look, is also given in full, to illustrate a verb of the fourth conjugation with a moveable accent.

<i>Infinitive :</i>	хотѣть	смотре́ть	бѣжа́ть
<i>Past :</i>	хотѣлъ	смотре́лъ	бѣжа́лъ
<i>Past gerun. :</i>	хотѣвъ, хотѣвши	смотре́въ	бѣжа́въ
		смотре́вши	бѣжа́вши
<i>Pres. gerun. :</i>	хотѣ [not used]	смотре́и	бѣжа́и
<i>Pres. part. act. :</i>	хотѣ́щій	смотре́щій	бѣгу́щій
<i>Past part. act. :</i>	хотѣ́вшій	смотре́вшій	бѣжа́вшій
<i>Past pt. pass. :</i>	—	[о]смотре́нный	—
<i>Present :</i>	я хочу́	смотрю́	бѣгу́
	ты хоче́шь	смотре́шь	бѣжи́шь
	она, онъ хоче́тъ	смотре́тъ	бѣжи́тъ
	мы хоте́мъ	смотре́мъ	бѣжи́мъ
	вы хоте́те	смотре́те	бѣжи́те
	они, онѣ хоте́тъ	смотре́тъ	бѣгу́тъ
<i>Pres. pt. pass. :</i>	хотѣ́мый	—	—
<i>Imperative :</i>	хоти́	смотре́и	бѣги́

Most dissyllabic original verbs in -и́ть have a variable accent, e.g. учи́ть to learn, учу́, учи́шь; пусти́ть to let go, пу́щу, пу́стишь; the 1st person singular only is accented like the infinitive, e.g. пу́стятъ, служа́тъ (they serve). The present gerundive active, present participle active, and present participle passive are generally accented like the infinitive, e.g. любѣ́и, любѣ́щій, любѣ́мый (люби́ть to love).

The past participle passive is generally accented like the secondary accent of the present, e.g. хвата́тъ to seize, хвачу́, хва́тишь, хва́ченный.

Some verbs have a fixed accent, e.g. про́ститъ to forgive, про́щу, про́стишь, про́щённый, etc.; but such are mostly derivative, e.g. да́ръ gift, да́ри́тъ to present, дѣ́иво marvel, удѣ́вится to marvel.

## § 56. THE FOURTH CONJUGATION.

*Derivative Verbs.*

The infinitive *always* ends in -ить, and the accentuation is fixed; v. § 47 for an example.

As stated in § 54 these derivative verbs are mostly accented on the terminations.

e.g. from adjectives and nouns:—

чёрный	black	чернить	to blacken
пьяный	drunk	пьянить	to make drunk
хитрый	cunning	хитрить	{ to dodge to be cunning
мúка*	torment	мúчить	to torture
грусть	sorrow	грустить	to grieve

But those derived from verbs mostly have a variable accent, e.g. ставить (ставлю, ста́вишь), носить, возить, водить, будить (to place, carry, convey, lead, awaken), from стать, нести́, везти́, вести́, да́ть, v. § 54.

But very many conserve the original accent, especially if the verb has more than two syllables.

e.g. споръ	dispute	спóрить	to dispute
ссора	quarrel	ссора́ть	to set at variance
сла́бый	weak	сла́бить	to weaken
ста́рый	old	ста́рить	to make old
кислый	acid	кисли́ть	make acid
ни́зъ	low down	ни́зить	to degrade
ни́щій	poor	ни́щить	to impoverish
вѣ́ра	faith	вѣ́рить	to believe

---

\* Distinguish from мукá flour: мучи́ть to flour.



*Trisyllabic* :—

гото́вый	ready	гото́вить	to make ready (past part. pass. гото́вленный)
эконо́мъ	economical	эконо́мить	to economize (trans. and intrans.)

To this last principle that trisyllabic verbs retain the original accent there are many exceptions, especially in all adjectives and nouns denoting substance.

e.g.	бога́тый	rich	богати́ть	to enrich
	весёлый	merry	весели́ть	enliven
	зеле́ный	green	зеле́нить	to make green
	зото́	gold	зото́тить	to gild (зото́ченный)
	ле́дъ	ice, icy	леде́нить	to freeze
	го́воръ	speech	говори́ть	to say

### § 57. ANOMALOUS VERBS.

A few anomalous verbs remain over for discussion. They are *either* of mixed conjugations or obsolete forms.

#### I. *Mixed conjugations.*

(1) The same root throughout.

(a) *певѣть*, to roar, forms its present like a verb of the first conjugation, e.g. *пе́ву, певёшь . . . певѣ́тъ*, and therefore all derivative forms such as *пе́вущій, пѣвѣ́* (gerundive), etc.

(б) *хотѣть* to wish [v. § 55, II.].

(γ) *-дѣть* (only used in compounds, *одѣ́ть* to dress, etc.) and *ста́ть*, to stand, form their present in *дѣ́ву, дѣ́нешь; ста́ну, ста́нешь*; and belong to the first conjugation.

- (δ) *посѣтить* to visit, *обратить* to direct, from the 1st person present in *и* instead of *ч*; thus, *посѣщѹ, посѣтишь*; *обращѹ, обратишь*.
- (ε) *-шибить* (only used in compounds, e.g. *ошибиться* make a mistake, perfective; imperfective *ошибаться, ошибаюсь*, etc.) forms its present as in the first conjugation, its past as in the intransitives of the second, e.g. *ошибѹсь, ошибѣтся . . . ошибѹтся*; past *ошибся, ошиблась, ошиблось, ошиблись*. The participles are *ошибающийся, ошибшійся*; gerundives, *ошибаясь, ошибшись*.
- (ζ) Distinguish *зрѣть, зрю, зрятъ [зрённый]* to look at; and *зрѣть* to ripen, *зрѣю, зрѣешь*, etc.

## II. Using different roots.

E.g. in English "to be," "I was," "to go," "I went."

(1) *идти* forms its present from the root *ид*, its past from *шед*. e.g.

*Present*: *идѹ, идѣшь . . . идѹтъ*

*Present part. and gerundive*: *идѹщій, идя*

*Past*: *шѣлъ, шла, шло, шли*

*Past part. act. and gerundive*: *шедшій, шедши*

(2) *быть* to be

*Verbal noun*: *бытіе*

*Present*: *есть; суть*

*Past*: *былъ, была, было, были*

*Future*: *бѹду, бѹдешь, бѹдетъ, бѹдемъ, бѹдете, бѹдутъ*

*Future participle*: *бѹдущій*. But v. § 44 (4), footnote.

*Past participle*: *бывшій*

*Past gerundive*: *бывши отъ бывъ*

*Imperative*: *бѹдь, бѹдѣте*

- (3) *ѣхать*, to drive, has as its present form *ѣду*, *ѣдешь*, *ѣдетъ*, *ѣдемъ*, *ѣдете*, *ѣдутъ*, and thence the gerundive *ѣдучи*, the participle *ѣдущій*, the imperative *ѣзжай* or *ѣди*; but in the past *ѣхалъ*, *ѣхавъ*, etc.; *ѣзжѣть* (iterative). •

The present tense of *быть* is scarcely ever used. *есть* and *суть* only survive in definitions, and are then used for all the persons. E.g. *Богъ есть истина* God is the truth; otherwise, *Пётръ очень мудръ* Peter is very wise, *это моё а то твоё* this is mine and that is yours. [v. § 86.]

The compounds of *быть* are peculiar. The future tense is *-буду*, e.g. *забыть* to forget, *забѣду*.

*пробыть* to stay (perfective), *пробывать* (imperfective)

*избыть*, *избывать* to lose or squander

*выбыть*, *выбывать* to retire, resign

*добыть*, *добывать* to earn

*перебыть*, *перебывать* to frequent

*прибыть*, *прибывать* to arrive or increase; *прибыль* (fem.) profit

*отбыть*, *отбывать* to depart or get rid of

*убыть*, *убывать* to decrease

### III. *Obsolete forms.*

(1) *здать*, to build, has a reduplicated present *зѣжду*, *зѣждешь*, *зѣждетъ*, *зѣждемъ*, *зѣждете*, *зѣждутъ*; and thence *зѣждущій*, *зѣждущи*; and the imperative *зѣжди* (*зѣжди*). For the rest it is like *знѣю*.

(2) There are four verbs in “*m*,” like the Latin *sum* and the Greek verbs in *μ*.

(a) **ВѢМЪ** I know (root **ВѢД\***).

This is entirely obsolete; but one form survives in the expression **Богъ вѣсть** God knows.

The derivatives are numerous, e.g. **вѣдомый** an acquaintance, **вѣдомость** the gazette or the news.

The infinitive **вѣсть** is also a feminine noun, meaning "news"; the iterative form **вѣдать** is in common use in compound verbs; **-вѣдать** being the perfective and **-вѣдывать** the imperfective; the old imperative **вѣдъ** survives as a conjunction, more or less equivalent to *voici*.

(β) **есмь**, *v. antea* under **быть**.(γ) **ѣсть** to eat (root **ѣд**).

*Present*: **ѣмъ, ѣшь, ѣстѣ,† ѣдѣмъ, ѣдите, ѣдятъ**

*Imperative* (irregular): **ѣшь, ѣшьте**

*Past*: **ѣлъ, ѣла, ѣло, ѣли**

*Part. and gerundives*: **ѣдѣ, ѣдущій, ѣвши, ѣвшій, ѣдомый, -ѣденный**

(δ) **дать** to give (perfective). The present form (perfective future):—

**дамъ, дашь, дастъ, дадимъ, дадите, дадутъ**

The imperfective forms are supplied by **давать**.  
[v. § 53 (5).]

*Imperative*: **дай**

*Past*: **далъ, дала, далó, дали**

*Part. and gerundives*: **давши, давшій, дающий**

\* Greek *οἶδα*, English "I wot."

† Cf. Latin *est* he is, *est* he eats; German *ist* and *isst*.

## § 58. THE ASPECTS OF THE VERBS.

*Preliminary.*

In § 42 (2) (ii) the "aspects" of the Russian verb were mentioned. They could not be adequately explained until the accident of the verb had been fully treated.

To recapitulate: the verb in early Russian had a present, imperfect and aorist (or preterite) indicative, and a compounded perfect and pluperfect like the English "I have read," and the Latin *gavisus sum*. There were some few traces even of a future, but no conjunctive or other moods.

Russian discarded all the inflections save that of the present, and modified the stem or root to express the same tenses; e.g. я свистѣлъ I whistled, is "jaï sifflé"; я свистнулъ is "je sifflai"; я свисталъ is "je sifflais," I was whistling; я свистывалъ I used to whistle (now and then).

Each of these "aspects" has its conjugation; and, thus, those Russian verbs which have all the aspects possess nearly the same richness as the Greek verb with its present infinitive and participle, aorist forms, perfect forms, etc.

The perfective regards the action accomplished or to be accomplished, not the process of doing it.

e.g. УЧИТЬ-ЛИ ВАШЪ МАЛЬЧИКЪ СВОИ УРОКИ?

Does your boy learn his lessons (as a rule)?

Нѣтъ, но онъ ихъ выучить сегодня is the perfective; there can be no present to an aorist or preterite. The present form is used as a perfect contemplating the completion of the act. The answer is: "No, but he will learn them to-day."

The answer might proceed: и такъ будетъ ходить въ школу съ понедельника (i.e. the imperfective future) "and so will go to school from Monday next." Or again, я буду стоять ежедневно на одномъ и томъ же мѣстѣ I shall stand every day at the same spot. Стану can also be used as the auxiliary, but signifies rather "I will begin to."

e.g. Въ будущемъ году ты станешь работать въ конторѣ.

Next year you will start working at the office.

The primary division, which very nearly all Russian verbs have, is into imperfective and perfective. Some have further forms, derived from either or both in certain cases, from the imperfective.

The *abstract*, e.g. рыба плаваетъ быстро the fish swims quickly (as a habit), этотъ пловецъ плывётъ очень хорошо this swimmer is swimming very well (at this instant).

The *inceptive*, e.g. болѣть to fall ill, заболѣть to fall ill gradually. The *iterative* or *habitual*, only used colloquially and in the past tense; e.g. Ходите-ли вы часто въ театръ? Нѣтъ, теперь не хожу, но когда-то хаживалъ. Do you often go to the theatre? No, I don't now; once I used to go occasionally. From the perfective the perfective form in -нуть [v. § 50, I.] has been

in some verbs specialized into the "instantaneous" or "semelfactive" aspect, an act done on a single occasion.

e.g. **Запрещено стучать въ окно́.**

It is forbidden to knock at the window.

(Imperfective or iterative: **стучать, стучу́.**)

**Кто́ это́ тамъ стучи́тъ въ дверь?**

Who is that knocking at the door?

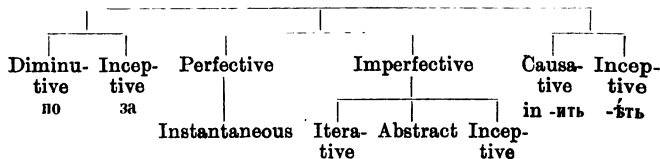
**Я не могъ войти́, такъ сту́кнулъ.**

I could not get in, so I knocked.

Further, certain verbs derived from adjectives have causative and inceptive forms in **-ить** and **-ѣть** [v. § 53].

	Intrans.	Trans.	
e.g. <b>зе́лѣный</b> green	<b>зеле́нѣть</b>	<b>зеле́нить</b>	
<b>сла́бый</b> weak	<b>слабе́ть</b>	<b>сла́бить</b>	etc.

### *Aspects.*



Some verbs have no perfective. [v. § 59, IV.]

e.g. **предвидѣть** to foresee

**зависѣть** to depend

**содержать (содѣржить)** to contain

**принадлежать (-жу́, -жить)** to belong

**подлежать** to be subject to

**сожалѣть (-ѣю)** to regret

**предстоять (-стою́)** to impend

**сочувствовать** to sympathize

**предчувствовать** to forebode

## § 59. THE FORMATION OF THE ASPECTS.

I. *From original verbs.*

## (1) First conjugation.

The simplest form of the uncompound verb is imperfective.

e.g. печь to cook  
жечь to burn  
нести to carry, etc.

With these may be reckoned the primitives of the third and fourth conjugations.

e.g. слать шлю I send  
бить бью I beat  
спать сплю I sleep  
гнать гоню I drive

There are some exceptions :—

e.g. лечь лягу I shall lie down  
пасть паду́ I shall fall  
сѣсть сяду́ I shall sit down  
стать стану́ I shall stand  
дать дамъ I shall give

The perfectives of monosyllabic verbs are formed with prepositions, i.e. by compounding the verb.

The imperfectives of сѣсть, etc., are :—

сѣсть садиться  
лечь ложиться  
стать становиться (становлюсь, становится)  
дать давать [v. § 53 (5)]  
пасть падать, падаю



But these verbs, *when uncompoundd*, form iteratives out of the full root with an *-ать* suffix.

e.g. <i>слать</i>	to send	<i>-сылать</i>
<i>брать</i>	to take	<i>-бирать</i>
<i>ждать</i>	to wait	<i>-ждать</i>
<i>драть</i>	to tear	<i>-дирать</i>
<i>звать</i>	to call	<i>-зывать</i>
<i>жечь</i>	to burn	<i>-жигать</i>
<i>тереть</i>	to rub	<i>-тирать</i>
<i>жать</i>	to press	<i>-жимать</i>
<i>жать</i>	to reap	<i>-жинать</i>
<i>ѣсть</i>	to eat	<i>-ѣдать</i>
<i>[вѣсть]</i>	to know	<i>вѣдать</i>

*Similarly* in the third conjugation, in the *vocalic* stems.

e.g. <i>бить</i>	to beat	<i>бивать</i>
<i>дуть</i>	to blow	<i>дувать</i>
<i>знать</i>	to know	<i>знавать</i> , etc.

In the last-named verb a distinction must be made between *-знаю*, *-знаёшь*, etc. (from *-знать*), and *-знаю*, *-знаёшь*, etc. (from *-знавать*). [v. § 53 (5).]

When these primitive verbs are compoundd, the imperfective takes the derivative form in *-ать*, and the perfective the original form in *-ть*, *-чь*.

e.g. <i>сжечь</i>	to burn down, <i>сожгу</i>	I shall burn down,
<i>сжигать</i>	(imperfective), <i>сжигаю</i>	I am burning down
<i>помочь</i>	to help, <i>помогу</i>	I shall help; <i>помогать</i>
	(imperfective)	

Similarly *признать* to recognise, *признаю* I shall recognise; but imperfective *признавать*, *признаю* I recognise.

	забыва́ть (imperf.)	забыва́ю I forget
<i>but</i>	забы́ть (perf.)	забу́ду I shall forget
	разсѣ́вать (imperf.)	разсѣ́ваю I disperse
	разсѣ́ять (perf.)	разсѣ́ю I shall disperse
	умира́ть (imperf.)	умира́ю I am dying
	умерѣ́ть (perf.)	умру́ I shall die
	понима́ть (imperf.)	понима́ю I understand
	пони́ть (perf.)	пойму́ I shall understand
		[v. § 49, II.]
	возстава́ть (imperf.)	возстаю́ I rise
	возста́ть (perf.)	возстану́ I shall rise
	выно́сить (imperf.)	вы́несу to carry away (perf.)

*Observe.*—прочѣсть, прочита́ть to read through (perfective); прочита́ывать (imperfective).

## (2) Second conjugation in -нуть.

These verbs, as has been explained, are all either perfective or imperfective in themselves.

e.g. уга́снуть to be extinguished (imperf.), past tense уга́сь; засо́хнуть to dry, засо́хъ; кинуть to throw, imperf. кидáть, past tense кину́лъ.

Perfectives in -нуть are often called "instantaneous" or "semelfactive," because they denote a single action.

e.g. крича́ть to shout, кри́кнуть to shout on one occasion

дерза́ть, дерзну́ть to venture

## (3) Third conjugation.

The manner in which the original verbs of this conjugation form their perfectives has been stated in § 59, I. (1).

Derivative verbs in *-ѣть* are "inceptive" in meaning, e.g. *зелѣѣть*, *viridescō*, to become green, and naturally imperfective. They must be compounded with a preposition to make them perfective.

Derivative verbs in *-ать, -ять* are naturally imperfective, and compounded with various prepositions become perfective, e.g. *дѣлать* to do, *сдѣлать*.

Most original verbs in *-ать*, such as *писать* to write, can only form their perfective by means of a preposition, as such verbs cannot vary their form any further, or make use of a suffixal stem, e.g. *писать*, perfective *написать*.

Thus *напишѹ* means "I shall write."

To the third conjugation belong the *iteratives* in *-ать* and *-ывать*. The former are always accented on the termination, the latter always on the root which is in its fullest form.

e.g. *-честь, -чу*: *читать* to read (imperfective),  
*прочитать* (perfective), *читываю* (iterative)  
 I read here and there.

*звать* to call (perfective in compounds only),  
 e.g. *созвать* to call together (iterative *созывать*).

Verbs whose radical vowel is *o* change the *o* to a *i* in forming the iterative.

e.g. *ломать* to break      *лѣмывать*  
*бросать* to throw      *брѣсывать*  
 (abstract sense: *брѣсить* concrete)  
 and even *усвѣить* to appropriate      *усвѣивать*

In some cases, the difference between the imperfective and iterative is merely accentual, the iterative termination -ать being always accented.

Imperfective.			Iterative.	
e.g. двѣгаться	move	онъ двѣжется	двѣгать	-двѣгалъ
бѣгать	run	бѣгаю	бѣгать	-бѣгалъ
ползать	creep	ползаю	ползать	-ползалъ
падать	fall	падаю	падать	-падалъ

*This distinction only applies to some original verbs of the type of писать [v. § 52 (3)], in which the suffixal vowel -a- is dropped in the formation of the present; such verbs having a fixed accent in the imperfective on the root, and the infinitive termination -ать unaccented.*

#### (4) Fourth conjugation.

Many of the original verbs in -ить or -ѣть, -ю, -ишь, have another form of conjugation in -ять, like the iteratives in -ать. In some cases the original form in -ить, -ѣть is perfective, the imperfective being in -ать (as was seen to be the rule in monosyllabic verbs like знать, мочь, беречь, знавать, -могáть, -берегáть); in others the original form in -ить is imperfective, and the alternative -ять or ать has an *abstract* meaning.

Again, some verbs in -ить derived from intransitive monosyllabic verbs, such as лечь, стать, etc., are causative.

Perfective.		Imperfective.
e.g. простѣть	to forgive *	прощать
явить	show	являть

---

\* Простѣться say farewell, простѣте good-bye.

Perfective.		Imperfective.
e.g. лиши́ть	deprive	лиша́ть
пусти́ть	permit	пуска́ть
ступи́ть	tread	ступа́ть
хвати́ть	seize	хвата́ть
купи́ть	buy	покупа́ть (distinguish купа́ть to bathe)
роди́ться	be born	ражда́ться*
наслади́ться	enjoy	наслажда́ться*
посѣти́ть	visit	посѣща́ть*
убѣди́ть	to convince	убѣжда́ть*

Imperfective.		
<i>Abstract or habitual.</i>		<i>Concrete meaning.</i>
e.g. лета́ть	fly	летѣ́ть [v. § 58]
пла́вать	swim	плы́ть
бѣга́ть	run	бѣжа́ть ( <i>but бѣга́ть</i> iterative)
сажа́ть	plant	сади́ть
лома́ть	break	лома́ть
Similarly носи́ть	carry	неси́
води́ть	lead	вести́
вози́ть	bear	вези́
лѣзи́ть	climb	лѣзѣ́ть
блиста́ть	gleam	блестѣ́ть
гона́ть	drive	гна́ть

When these verbs are compounded, the derivative form in -ать, -ять is imperfective, the original form perfective.

e.g. отплы́вать	отплѣ́ть	to swim away
убѣга́ть	убѣжа́ть	to run away

---

\* Church Slav change of д to жд, and т to щ.

e.g. Я ломаю карандаши.

I (generally) break pencils.

Медведь ломится въ дверь.

The bear is breaking into the door.

Корабль отплываетъ.

The ship is leaving port.

Лодка уже отплыла отъ берега.

The boat has left the shore.

Нѣмцы убѣгаютъ отъ штыка.

Germans run away from the bayonet.

Собака схватила кость и убѣжала.

The dog snatched the bone and ran away.

Нѣмцы пришли во Францію съ тѣмъ чтобы грабить.

The Germans came into France to plunder.

Нѣмцы пришли въ Бельгію и ограбили всѣ города.

The Germans came into Belgium and plundered all the cities.

Thirdly, the alternative form in -ать, -ять may be iterative.

	Imperfective.		Iterative.
e.g.	хранѣть	keep	хранѣть
	видѣть	see	видѣть
	ударить	strike	ударѣть

In compound verbs the form in -а́ть, -я́ть is used for imperfectives, the form in -и́ть for perfectives.

e.g. Отвѣчу I shall answer.

Отвѣчаю I am answering.

Разорю ва́ши города́ и селѣнія.

I will destroy your cities and settlements.

Въ продолженіе двухъ мѣсяцевъ король разоря́лъ непріятельскіе города́.

For two months the king had been destroying the hostile cities.

Generally the iteratives are formed in **-ивать** or **-ывать**, verbs in **-ть** taking **-ивать**.

e.g. говорить	сpeak	говáривать
проси́ть	ask	пра́шивать
ходи́ть	go	ха́живать
гляде́ть	look at	глады́вать
ви́деть	see	ви́дывать

## II. *The formation of the perfective in derivative verbs.*

As has been stated, derivative verbs end in **-ть**, **-ать** and **-ить**.

Most verbs in **-ть** are inceptive and naturally imperfective, and generally, if uncompounded, have no perfective.

e.g. слабе́ть to become weak

Verbs in **-ать** form the perfective by compounding, and this rule applies to original verbs like **писа́ть**, **пишу́**, **пи́шетъ**, as well as to derivatives, such as **жела́ть**, **пожела́ть**.

As to the choice of preposition, there is no general rule; **на**, **разъ**, **по**, **о**, **у**, **вы**, **съ**, etc., can all be used. Only practice can distinguish the perfectives from the compounds.

e.g. дѣлать	to do	сдѣлать
жела́ть	to wish	пожела́ть
владѣ́ть	to rule	овладѣ́ть
смотре́ть	to look	посмотрѣ́ть
ви́деть	to see	уви́деть
писа́ть	to write	написа́ть
тра́тить	to lose	истра́тить

Verbs in **-ить** mostly have a secondary form **-ять**, which in the uncompounded verb has an iterative

meaning. Some uncompounded imperfective verbs in -ить form their perfectives, like those in -ать, by compounding with a particle.

e.g. строить	to build	построить
грабить	to plunder	огрбить
сердиться	to be angry	разсердиться
тревожить	to disquiet	встревожить
платить	to pay	заплатить

Again no general rule can be stated.

### III. Aspects formed from a different root.

Of these there are very few.

	Perfective.		Imperfective.
e.g. идти	to go	ходить	
поймать	to catch	ловить (but понять understand, понимать)	
ударить	to strike	бить, and ударять	
положить	to lay	класть (кладу)	
взять	to take	брать	

	Concrete.		Abstract.		Iterative.
e.g. ехать	to drive	ездить	ездать		
слышать (слышу)	to hear	слыхать (слышю)			
дышать (дышитъ)	to breathe	дыхать (дышетъ)			

e.g. Я ъзжу въ городъ каждый день.

I go to the city every day.

Я ъхалъ домой съ возомъ.

I drove home (in a carriage).

Почти ежедневно хожу пѣшкомъ домой, но когда-то я ѣзжалъ вмѣстѣ съ бариномъ.

Almost every day I walk home; but sometimes I drove with the master.



IV. *The aspects of compound verbs.*

The general rule is that all compound verbs are perfective. The imperfective is formed by the iterative form in -ать, -ять, -ывать, -ивать; if a derivative form exists in -ить this serves as the imperfective, and the iterative in -ать, -ять, -ывать conserves the iterative meaning.

	Perfective.		Imperfective.
e.g.	вынести	to carry out	выносить
	выносить	to endure	вынашивать
	объехать	to drive round	объезжать
	вывезти	to cart out	вывозить
but	выводить	to lead about	вываживать
	вывозить	to take about (in a carriage)	вывозивать
	вызвать	to summon	вызыва́ть
	выиграть	to gain at play	выигрывать

*Observe.*—вы takes the accent, except in the imperfective, which retains the accent of the uncompounded verb. All other prepositions are unaccented, except in the past tenses and past participles passive of monosyllabic verbs, e.g. избранъ chosen [v. § 49, II.], нанятъ, прода́тъ, etc.

e.g.	выйти	to go out	выходить
	провести	to pass (time)	проводить
	обновить	to renew	обновлять
<i>Observe</i>	положить	suppose	полагать
	уложить	pack	укладывать
	докладить	report (a fact)	докладывать

*Observe:—*

	Perfective.		Imperfective.
<i>убежать</i>	выбѣжать	to run away	выбѣгать
<i>but</i>	выбѣгáть	to attain by a run	выбѣгивать
<i>уйти</i>	выйти	to go away	выходить
<i>but</i>	выходить	to gain	выхаживать
<i>забѣжать</i>	забѣжать (забѣду)	to go beyond	забѣжать
<i>but</i>	забѣдять	to tire out	забѣживать
	провести	to lead through	проводить
<i>but</i>	проводить	to accompany	провождать, or проваживать

*In some cases the only perfective is the semelfactive in -нуть.*

<i>двинуть</i>	e.g. двинуть	to move	двигать
<i>кивать</i>	кивнуть	to nod	кивать
	тронуть	to touch	трогать
<i>шептать</i>	шепнуть	to whisper	шептать
<i>кричать</i>	крикнуть	to cry	кричать
<i>вздыхать</i>	вздохнуть	to sigh	вздыхать

In forming imperfectives the general rule is that the iterative form of the uncompound verb is the stem of the imperfective of the compounded verb.

e.g.	промѣдлить	to delay	промѣдливать
	обмануть	to deceive	обманывать
	погаснуть*	to be extinguished	погасать
	погибнуть*	to perish	погибать
	взглянуть	to look up	взглядывать
	замкнуть	to lock up	замыкать

*Observe.*—тянуть (imperfective) to pull, тягивать;  
but in compounds, протянуть to stretch forth, протягивать. [v. § 50, I.]

---

\* But past tense погíбъ, погáсъ.

e.g. Онъ вытянулъ огромнаго лѣща.

He pulled up a huge bream.

Ивѣнъ Ивѣвичъ тѣвѣтъ лѣмкѣ дѣбѣраго семѣйника.

Iván Iványč works hard like a good family man [pulls the shoulder-strap].

Мой другъ неоднократно вытягивалъ меня изъ труднаго положенія.

My friend more than once has pulled me out of an awkward situation.

Other instances are :—

Perfective.		Imperfective.
узнѣть	acknowledge	узнавать (узнаю) [§ 53 (5)]
ослабѣть	to become weak	ослабѣвать
ослабнуть (semelfactive)		
повѣрить	believe	повѣрять
поручить	to commission	поручать
продолжить	to continue	продолжать
помѣтить	to mark	помѣчать
убѣжать	to run away	убѣгать
переплыть	to swim through	переплывать
уѣхать	to drive away (in a carriage)	уѣзжать
отогнѣть	to drive away	отгонять
описѣть	to describe	описывать
приготовить	to prepare	приготавливать
придѣлать	to affix	придѣлывать
прижечь	to scorch	прижигать
приказѣть	to decree	приказывать
примирѣть	to reconcile	примирять
избрѣть	to choose	избирать

The learner must *not* confuse those verbs derived from *compound nouns or adjectives*. Such verbs are naturally imperfective, as the formative stem contains the particle, which is not added to the verb.

	Imperfective.	Perfective.
e.g. безъ покоя without rest	безпоко́ить	обезпоко́ить
	disturb	
ра́зумъ reason	разумѣ́ть	уразумѣ́ть
	understand	
обѣ́дъ dinner	обѣ́дать	пообѣ́дать
забо́та trouble	забо́титься	озабо́титься
наслѣ́д-ство inheritance	наслѣ́довать	унаслѣ́довать
предчу́вствіе foreboding	предчу́вствовать	
сочу́вствіе sympathy	сочу́вствовать [v. § 58]	
безъ люде́й without people	безлюде́ть	to become depopulated (обезлюде́ть perf.)

The accentuation of compounded verbs is that of the simple, save with *вы*, v. § 59, IV.

*Except* вто́рить to repeat

повто́рить to repeat, imperfective повто́рить

я́сниться to clear up (of the weather)

изъя́снить explain, imperfective изъясни́ть

#### V. *Causatives and inceptives.*

As stated in § 53 (1) and § 54, verbs derived from adjectives have transitive forms in *-и́ть*, and intransitives in *-ѣ́ть*.

e.g. сині́й blue, синѣ́ть to turn blue, сини́ть to make blue

мя́гкій soft, мягчи́ть and размягча́ть

сла́дкій sweet, услади́ть and усажда́ть

молодо́й young, молодѣ́ть to grow young,

молоди́ть to make young, etc., etc.

Similarly, transitive verbs in -ить are derived from intransitive primitives.

e.g. ле <sup>чь</sup> to lie down	поло <sup>жить</sup> to lay
с <sup>есть</sup> to sit down	поса <sup>дить</sup> to seat
ста <sup>ть</sup> to stand (ста <sup>ну</sup> )	стано <sup>виться</sup> to stand, and ста <sup>вить</sup> to place

e.g. Я поста<sup>вилъ</sup> ва<sup>зу</sup> на ко<sup>лонну</sup>.

I put the vase on the column.

VI. по and за as forming depreciatory and inceptive verbs.

по when compounded with some verbs gives a depreciatory or diminutive sense.

e.g. мы<sup>ться</sup> to wash

помы<sup>ться</sup> to wash here and there

пому<sup>тить</sup> to create squabbles

поку<sup>ривать</sup>, поку<sup>рить</sup>, to smoke occasionally

поку<sup>шать</sup> (perfective по<sup>ѣсть</sup>) to eat by snacks

пока<sup>рмливать</sup> (поко<sup>рмить</sup>) to feed slightly

пока<sup>чивать</sup> to waver (пока<sup>чать</sup> perfective,

пока<sup>чнуть</sup> to shake)

пока<sup>шлять</sup> to cough a little (пока<sup>шливать</sup>)

за often creates another inceptive aspect, to begin doing.

e.g. зава<sup>ривать</sup> (зава<sup>рить</sup> perfective) to simmer

завѣ<sup>шивать</sup> (завѣ<sup>сить</sup>) to veil, begin veiling

засви<sup>стать</sup> to begin whistling

засмѣ<sup>яться</sup> to begin laughing

засы<sup>хать</sup> (засо<sup>хнуть</sup>) to start drying

затме<sup>вать</sup> (затм<sup>ить</sup>) to grow dusk, etc.

затон<sup>уть</sup> to start sinking (зата<sup>пливать</sup>),

зато<sup>пить</sup> perfective

засѣ<sup>вать</sup> (засѣ<sup>ять</sup>) to begin to sow

But compounds with *за* are often perfective.

e.g. *Русские затопили\* корабль въ Севастопольской бухтѣ.*

The Russians sank the ship in the Bay of Sebastopol.

#### § 60. REFLEXIVE AND PASSIVE VERBS.

As stated previously [v. *infra*, § 10, § 42 (2) (i) and (ii)] the Russian verb is very defective; it possesses only one conjugated tense, and no subjunctives.

The passive is mostly supplied by the reflexive, *ся* and *сь* being added to the terminations [v. § 41, V. (1)]; *ся* being added to consonantal terminations, *сь* to vocalic. This *ся* is nearly always unaccented; there are very few exceptions.

e.g. *я дѣлаюсь* I become, am made, *дѣлается, дѣлавшись*, etc.

*родиться* to be born, *родится, родился, родились* or *родились*.

*Deponent* verbs also exist, i.e. reflexive forms in which the reflexive idea has vanished, or is not expressed or required in translation.

e.g. *я моюсь* I wash myself, I wash  
*король вернулся домой* the King has returned home  
*стыдиться* to feel ashamed †

---

\* Distinguish *затопить, затопленный (затопить)* to sink; and *затопить, затопленный, затопливать*, to heat.

† Distinguish *стыдъ* shame, *стыдиться*; and *стыть* (perfective), *стынуть* (imperfective) to be cold.

Similarly in French “se suicider,” “s’approcher de” are always reflexive or deponent.

But when a verb has as its express object the same person as the subject, the enclitic form *ся* and *сь* (which are *always* sounded *сá* and *сь* [v. § 41, V. (1)]), are *not* used, the full form *себя* taking their place.

e.g. Алексѣй не владѣеть собой.

Alexis has no self-control.

Мальчикъ взлѣзъ на крышу и убился.

The boy crawled on to the roof and was killed.

Онъ покѣнчилъ собой.

He committed suicide [ended by himself].

Онъ оговорился что его цифры могутъ быть невѣрны и себя оградилъ этимъ отъ всякихъ нареканій.

He defended himself on the ground that his figures might not be correct, and guarded himself on this score from all blame.

Ты не использовалъ своего положенія а я провёлъ своё время безполезнымъ образомъ.

You made no use of your position, and I spent my time uselessly.

Я всегда имѣю при себѣ портретъ жены.

I always have my wife's portrait with me.

The Passive is also expressed in two other ways:—

(1) With a passive participle and the verb *быть* as in English.

e.g. Комната была убрана цвѣтами.

The room was decorated with flowers.

(2) With the verb in the third person plural, with the indefinite meaning of "one," "on," "man."

e.g. Зову́тъ меня́ по фами́лии Мо́наховымъ.

My family name is Monákhov [they call me . . . .]

The reflexive forms are never used loosely to express "one another." Thus [v. § 82, IV.]:—

Рабо́чие Росси́и, А́нглии, Фра́нции и Герма́нии  
убива́ютъ другъ дру́га.

The workmen of Russia, England, France and  
Germany are slaying one another.

Слѣ́довали другъ за дру́гомъ.

They followed each other.

## THE NUMERALS.

### § 61. PRELIMINARY.

The inflection of the Russian numerals is at first sight very difficult. The problem can be simplified.

(a) In the first place, nearly all the numerals are nouns, and are therefore followed by the genitive plural.

(β) Secondly, being nouns, when compounded, e.g. двѣ́сти (two hundred), each part follows its own declension.

(γ) Thirdly, два, три, четы́ре, 2, 3 and 4, take the equivalent of the old dual, i.e. the genitive singular.

(δ) Fourthly, the noun in ordinals is governed by the last element of the numeral.



e.g. пять козъ five goats

but двѣ козы two goats (козѣ, plural козы)

три рублѣ three roubles (plural рублѣ)

тридцать три поѣзда thirty-three trains

Also сто one hundred

двѣсти two hundred (Old Slav dual termination)

триста three hundred (gen. sing.)

пятьсотъ five hundred (gen. plural)

Other notes on the use of the numerals will be found in § 81.

## § 62. I.—The Numerals 1–10.

Arabic.	Cardinal.	Part of speech.	Ordinal.	Collective.*	Fraction.
1	одинъ	Adj.	первый		
2	два	„	второй	двое, пара	половина
3	три	„	третій†	трое	треть ‡
4	четыре	„	четвёртый	четыре	четвёрть‡
5	пять	Noun	пятый	пятеро	пятая§
6	шесть	„	шестой	шестеро	шестая§
7	семь	„	седьмой	семеро	etc.
8	восемь	„	восьмой	восьмеро	
9	девять	„	девятый	девятеро	
10	десять	„	десятый	десятеро	

These are the ten simple forms.

\* The most common are двое, трое, четверо, пятеро, семеро; but all are equally common in the form вдвое, втрое, etc., meaning 2nd, twice, three times as much. Families are thus designated: у него двое, трое, четверо, дтей: пять, шесть, семь, etc., человекъ дтей; of an assembly, ихъ будетъ пять, etc., человекъ.

† Declined like бараний [v. § 34 (3)].

‡ Feminines in я.

§ Supply часть part. All the other fractions are similarly formed.

|| Very rare.

Одинъ is declined exactly like самъ [v. § 41, VIII.]; the vowel “и” drops out.

Thus—одинъ, одно́, одна́, одного́, одной, etc.

<i>Plural.</i>		
	Masc. and Neut.	Fem.
e.g. Nom.	оди́и	оди́ѣ
Gen. Loc.	оди́ихъ	оди́ихъ
Dat.	оди́имъ	оди́имъ
Instr.	оди́ими	оди́ими

The plural means “some,” cf. English “the ones.” Both forms, оди́и, оди́ѣ, are generally sounded alike (оди́и).

e.g. Вѣ́дъ на э́тихъ по́лкахъ оста́лось то́лько де́сять кни́гъ.

There are only ten books left on these shelves.

У меня́ оста́лось ли́шь три ру́бли.

I have only three roubles left.

Какъ на бѣ́дѣ у меня́ оста́лось то́лько три яи́ца.

Unluckily I have only three eggs left.

два, три, четы́ре are declined as follows :—

	Masc. and Neut.	Fem.		
e.g. Nom.	два	двѣ	три	четы́ре
Gen. Loc.	двухъ	трѣхъ	четырёхъ	
Dat.	двумъ	трёмъ	четырёхъ	
Instr.	двумя́	тремя́	четырьмя́	

пять to де́сять are regular nouns like кость, часть, etc.

e.g. Nom.	пять
Gen. Dat. Loc.	пяти́
Instr.	пятью́

But, as nouns, the numerals are only followed by the genitive in the nominative or accusative; in oblique

cases they take the case of the nouns ; the numeral is attracted to the case of the noun.

оба, оба both, is declined similarly to два.

	Masc. and Neut.	Fem.
e.g. Nom.	оба	обѣ
Gen. Loc.	обѣихъ	обѣихъ
Dat.	обѣимъ	обѣимъ
Instr.	обѣими	обѣими

## II.—The Numerals 11–90.

Arabic.	Cardinal.	Part of speech.	Ordinal.
11	одиннадцать	Noun	одиннадцатый
12	двѣнадцать	„	двѣнадцатый (collective дюжина)
13	тринадцать	„	тринадцатый
14	четырнадцать	„	четырнадцатый
15	пятнадцать	„	пятнадцатый
16	шестнадцать	„	шестнадцатый
17	семнадцать	„	семнадцатый
18	восемнадцать	„	восемнадцатый
19	девятнадцать	„	девятнадцатый
20	двадцать	„	двадцатый
21	двадцать одинъ [v. § 61 (8)]	„	двадцать первый
22	двадцать два, etc.	„	двадцать второй, etc.
30	тридцать	Noun	тридцатый
40	сорокъ	„	сороковѣй
50	пятьдесятъ*	„	пятидесятый
60	шестьдесятъ	„	шестидесятый
70	сѣмьдесятъ	„	семидесятый
80	восьмьдесятъ	„	восемидесятый
90	девѣносто	„	девѣностый

For the fractions, *v. пять.*

\* Sounded pidd'is'yát'.

The cardinals from 11–90 are mere compositions of the simple forms and *десять* (10).

(1) The “teens” are formed by saying one-on-ten, two-on-ten; the preposition *на* is accented, except in *одиннадцать* and *четырнадцать*, and *десять* is contracted to *дцать*.

The numbers 11–19 are all declined like *десять*.

e.g. Nom.	<i>семнадцать</i>
Gen. Dat. Loc.	<i>семнадцати</i>
Instr.	<i>семнадцатью</i>

(2) The numbers 20 and 30 are similar compounds, two-ten, three-ten. They are declined thus:—

Nom.	<i>тридцать</i>
Gen. Dat. Loc.	<i>тридцати</i>
Instr.	<i>тридцатью</i>

(3) *сорок* (40), and *девяносто* (90), are nouns of the first conjugation. *сорок* accents the termination throughout, e.g. *сорока́*, *сороку́*, etc.

(4) The cardinals 50, 60, 70, 80 decline both parts *separately and similarly*.

e.g. Nom. Voc. Acc.	<i>семьдесят</i>
Gen. Loc. Dat.	<i>семидесяти</i>
Instr.	<i>семьюдесятью</i>

As though the two words were not written together.

### III.—*The Numerals 100–1,000,000.*

<i>Arabic.</i>	<i>Cardinal.</i>	<i>Part of speech.</i>	<i>Ordinal.</i>
100	<i>сто</i>	Noun	<i>со́тый*</i>
200	<i>два́сти</i>	Adj. & noun (joined)	<i>двухсо́тый</i>
300	<i>три́ста</i>	” ”	<i>трёхсо́тый</i>
400	<i>четы́реста</i>	” ”	<i>четырёхсо́тый</i>

\* Collective *со́тня*.

<i>Arabic.</i>	<i>Cardinal.</i>	<i>Part of speech.</i>	<i>Ordinal.</i>
500	пятьсо́тъ	Two nouns	пятисо́тый
600	шестьсо́тъ	„ „	шестисо́тый
700	семьсо́тъ	„ „	семисо́тый
800	восемьсо́тъ	„ „	восемьсо́тый
900	девятьсо́тъ	„ „	девятисо́тый
1,000	ты́сяча	Noun	ты́сячный
2,000	два́ ты́сячи	Adj. & noun	двухты́сячный
3,000	три ты́сячи	„ „	трёхты́сячный
4,000	четы́ре ты́сячи and so on	„ „	четырёх- ты́сячный
60,000	шестьдеся́тъ ты́сячь	Three nouns	шестидеся́ти- ты́сячный
100,000	сто ты́сячь	Nouns	сто- or ста- ты́сячный
1,000,000	миллио́нъ	Noun	миллио́нный

сто is declined as follows :—

*Singular.* Nom. Voc. Acc. сто  
Gen. ста, etc.

Similarly девяно́сто. But when сто is used in a long figure, with others, all the oblique cases are uniformly ста (the genitive); and similarly девяно́сто.

*Plural.* Nom. Voc. Acc. ста  
Gen. со́тъ  
Dat. ста́мъ  
Instr. ста́ми  
Loc. ста́хъ

*All the compound numerals in this division decline each part separately.*

e.g. двѣ́сти, двухсо́тъ, двумста́мъ, двумя́ста́ми,  
двухста́хъ, etc.

ты́сяча is a regular feminine noun ; but the instrumental singular is sometimes ты́сячью, as though it were a noun of the third declension.

сто, со́рокъ, девяно́сто, when declined with nouns, extend the genitive ending to the dative and instrumental, optionally to the locative.

e.g. Nom. Acc. сто со́рокъ листьо́въ 140 leaves (of paper)

Gen. ста сорока́ листьо́въ

Dat. ста сорока́ листьа́мъ

Instr. ста сорока́ листьа́ми

Loc. ста сорока́ листьа́хъ

#### IV. (1) *Frequency.* Examples of use :—

оди́нь разъ once, or одна́жды

два́ разъ twice, or два́жды

три́ разъ thrice, or три́жды

четы́ре разъ four times, etc., or четы́режды

пять разъ [v. § 24 (4)]

This is the only and regular way of forming this series.

(2) *Distributives* are formed with the preposition по, e.g. по́ два, по́ три, по́ четы́ре; but with all other numbers in the dative: по́ пяти, по́ сту, по́ сороку́, по́ девяно́сту (or по́ сорока́).

(3) *Nought* is нуль, masculine.

(4) *The noun is governed by the numeral immediately preceding, however high the whole numeral may be.* In the nominative, or accusative, the noun thus enumerated is in the singular after оди́нь; gen. sing. after два, три,

четыре; gen. plural after all the others. In the oblique cases, i.e. all except the accusative and nominative, the numeral and noun alike are in concord in the appropriate oblique case.

e.g. двадцать одинъ фунтъ 21 pounds

тридцать три коня 33 horses

меньше двадцати пяти минутъ less than 25 minutes

(5) *Decimals.*

нуль цѣлыхъ дѣвать дeся́тыхъ копе́йки съ версты́.

·9 kop. to the verst (nought wholes and nine tenths . . .).

Отъ одной до ста шестидесяти версты́, по одной цѣлой, четыре тысячи триста семьдесятъ пять десяти́тысячныхъ копе́йки съ пассажи́ра.

From 1 to 160 versts at 1·4375 kop. per passenger per verst.

(6) *Compound ordinals. Only the last numeral is declined.*

e.g. Два́дцать девя́таго декаб́ря (мѣ́сяца) въ тыся́ча во́семьсо́тъ девяно́сто се́дьюмо́мъ году́.

On the 29th Dec. ~~1914~~ [v. § 24 (1).]

Въ сто девяно́сто се́дьюмо́мъ году́ до рождества́ Христо́ва.

In 197 v.c.

Гостини́ца съ бо́лье чѣ́мъ дву́мяста́ми но́мерами.

A hotel with over 200 rooms.

Цѣ́на ко́мнаты пони́жается лѣ́томъ до пяти́десяти процѣ́нтовъ.

The price of rooms is reduced in the summer by 50%.

As a complete example, 2,367,134·8295 aršins (аршинъ a measure of length about a yard) would be thus declined:—

Nom. Два милліона, триста шестъдесѣтъ семь ты́сячъ, сто три́дцать четы́ре цѣ́лыхъ, во́семь ты́сячъ двѣ́сти девяно́сто пять десяти́тысячныхъ арші́на.

Acc. As genitive or nominative; in this case as nominative.

Gen. Двухъ милліо́новъ, трѣхсо́тъ шесті́десѣти семі́ ты́сячъ, ста три́дцѣти четы́рѣхъ цѣ́лыхъ, во́сьми ты́сячъ двухсо́тъ девяно́ста пяти́ десяти́тысячныхъ арші́на.\*

Dat. Двумъ милліо́намъ трѣмста́мъ шесті́десѣти семі́ ты́сячамъ ста (огъ сту́) три́дцѣти четы́ремъ цѣ́лымъ, во́сьми ты́сячамъ девяно́ста (огъ девяно́сту) пяти́ десяти́тысячнымъ арші́на.

Instr. Двумі́ милліо́нами тремѣста́ми шестью́-десятью, семью́ ты́сячами, ста три́дцѣтью четы́рьми цѣ́лыми, во́сьмью ты́сячами девяно́ста (огъ девяно́стомъ) пятью́ десяти́тысячными арші́на.

Loc. Двухъ милліо́нахъ трѣхста́хъ шесті́-десяти, семі́ ты́сячахъ, ста три́дцѣти четы́рѣхъ цѣ́лыхъ, во́сьми ты́сячахъ девяно́ста (огъ девяно́стѣ) пяти́ десяти́тысячныхъ арші́на.

(7) два, три, четы́ре, *in the nominative or accusative*, are followed by the noun in the genitive singular or by the nominative or genitive plural of adjectives.

\* Gen. sing., the decimal being expressed by  $\frac{8295}{10000}$  of an aršin. The last numeral always governs the noun.



This arbitrary rule is based on the fact that два, три, четыре in the older language took the dual; the dual having become obsolete, use was made of whatever inflections most closely approximated to it.

e.g. Nom. два высо́кихъ (or -ie) солда́та two tall soldiers

Gen. двухъ высо́кихъ солда́тъ

Dat. двумъ высо́кимъ солда́тамъ

Instr. двумя́ высо́кими солда́тами

Loc. двухъ высо́кихъ солда́тахъ

With nouns only used in the plural, there are alternative forms, дво́и, тро́и; otherwise the collectives are used.

e.g. воро́та the gates че́тверо воро́тъ four gates

But the ordinary collectives, with the genitive plural, may be used instead of дво́и, тро́и, че́тверо.\*

дво́е and тро́е are declined like обо́а, but accent the terminations ихъ, имъ, ими.

че́тверо and all the other similar collectives form the oblique cases like plural adjectives, accenting the termination, e.g. пяте́рыхъ, etc.

(8) полови́на, standing by itself, is "a half."

It is also used in composition with other words, e.g. полу́ра 1½ (for полъ-вторá; cf. German, andert-halb 1½, dritthalb 2½); also in words like полу́нта half a pound, полчаса́ half an hour, полу́года half a year, etc. For further notes, v. § 81, IV.

---

\* So, too, in Latin: *templum, tria templa*; but *aedes*, plural *trinae aedes*.

Both parts are separately declined; all the oblique cases of *полъ* being *полу*.

	<i>Masc. Neut.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>
	1½ aršins	1½ versts
e.g. N.V.A.	полторá аршіна	полторы́ версты
Gen.	полúтора аршинъ*	полúторы вёрсть
Dat.	{ полúтора } { полúтору } аршінамъ	полúторѣ верстáмъ
Instr.	{ полúтора } { полúторымъ } аршінами	полúторою верстáми
Loc.	{ полúтора } { полúторѣ } аршінахъ	полúторѣ верстáхъ

*Singular.**Plural.*

## Half-pound

N.V.A.	полуфúнта	полуфúнты
Gen.	полуфúнта	полуфúнтовъ
Dat.	полуфúнту	полуфúнтамъ
Instr.	полуфúнтомъ	полуфúнтами
Loc.	полуфúнтѣ	полуфúнтахъ

However, usage varies with regard to *полторá*, and the masculine forms are often employed with feminine nouns. The noun-component is declined in full in compounds like *полуфúнта*, and bears and retains its own accent.

*Пóлдень* and *пóлночь*, “noon” and “midnight,” are declined *полу́дня*, *полу́ночи*, and so on, the accent always resting on the second syllable, and the *полу́* being invariable.

Similarly, *полторáста* 150, *полу́тораста*, in all oblique cases.

Other fractions are expressed much as in English.

e.g. двѣ съ половиной бутылки two and a half bottles  
 тридцать пять и семнадцать тридцать восьмьхъ  
 $35\frac{17}{18}$   
 четыре и три четверти  $4\frac{3}{4}$

(9) *Dates.*

The date and the month are put into the genitive, and the year, if accompanying, into the ordinal with the genitive года (годъ) year. If the year stands by itself, the locative въ году is used.

In *dates* the plural of годъ is лѣта (лѣто summer).

e.g. двѣдцать пятаго декабрѣ тысяча девятьсотъ  
 четвёртаго года, 25th December 1904  
 въ тысяча восемьсотъ пятнадцатомъ году  
 in 1815  
 шестьдесятъ лѣтъ тому назадъ sixty years ago

Numerals preceding the noun are exact denotations; when they follow, approximate.

e.g. года черезъ три in about three years' time  
 послѣ трёхъ лѣтъ after three years

§ 63. THE ADVERBS.

The adverbial forms of adjectives are simply the neuter singular predicative, excepting adjectives in -скій, which form -ски; e.g. строго sternly, дорого dearly, раньше earlier, экономически economically.

Other adverbs will be learnt in the course of reading.

## § 64. THE PREPOSITIONS.

These are very commonly used in Russian, and are dealt with in §§ 70–80 in the Syntax.

## § 65. THE CONJUNCTIONS.

The conjunctions are best acquired in the course of reading. As the Russian verb possesses no moods, and as there is no inversion of sentences, the conjunctions present no difficulty. Some few may be noticed here.

и “and.”

аа “yes,” is also used for “and,” but has a corroborative strengthening significance, and belongs to the older language.

и also is used in a sentence to mean “also.”

а “but” or “and,” when used in contradistinction rather than conjunction.

но “but” in contradistinction, or denial.

ещё “also.”

или “or.” или—или, “either . . . or.”

ни—ни “neither—nor.” As will be seen in § 85, these require a double negative, i.e. a negatived verb as well.

## § 66. THE INTERJECTIONS.

These are best learnt from reading. Russian being a phonetic language, these primitive sounds are written as pronounced, not conventionally as in English; e.g. “hush” for “sh,” “ough!” for pain.

e.g. in Russian ухъ! охъ! ахъ! etc.

Other interjections are developments from recognised words, e.g. “Lo” (from “look”).

So, too, in Russian увы! woe!

## SYNTAX.

## § 67. PRELIMINARY.

In comparison with most other European languages Russian syntax presents comparatively few difficulties. The order is much the same as in English—subject, verb, object, adverbs.

There are no subjunctives, the use of which becomes technical as in French; gender is in the main sex, or determined by the suffix. Thus in French “*sa majesté le roi*” is feminine, and a following sentence must run: “*elle a bien voulu.*” In Russian, *Его Императорское Величество Царь соизволиъ*; the verb is in the masculine, though *Величество* is neuter.

In German, again, “*das Mädchen*” the girl, is supposed to be followed by neuter pronouns; in Russian, as in English, child *дитя́* (neuter), *лицо́* person (neuter) may be followed by *онъ*, *она́*, according to sense. Or again, *десять* is feminine, but “there remained ten” (neuter, *general* impersonal sense) is *осталось десять*. [v. § 62, I.]

The Russian richness in inflections gives the language a freedom of order such as was possessed by ancient Latin and Greek. But whereas the order of Latin was conventionalised and stiffened, Russian retains the natural order of words, with the liberty of slight transposition for emphasis; adjectives precede, unless otherwise desired; in fact, much the same considerations obtain as in English. But ambiguity ceases, the inflection defining the relations.

---

\* v. § 83, IV.

In one respect, as stated in § 33, Russian shows less flexibility in the formation of compound nouns. German (amongst modern languages) is the most adaptable, e.g. "Eisenbahnfremdverkehr-verbindungen" Railway - foreign - traffic - connections. English tacitly has the same power, with some ambiguity, e.g. The Foreign Office Clerks' Providence Society; the wooden baby's chair. In Russian all such relations *must* be stated by means of adjectives; e.g. железная дорога the railway, военные запасы war supplies, на полицейскомъ хранѣніи in police detention.

#### § 68. THE ARTICLE.

The article does not exist in Russian. Nevertheless **ТОТЪ** is occasionally used for the definite article, and **ОДИНЪ** for the indefinite, where the sentence requires amplification.

e.g. In the folk-tales:—

**ЖИЛЪ-БЫЛЪ ОДИНЪ БѢДНЫЙ ВДОВЕЦЪ.**

There once lived a poor widower.

**ТОТЪ САМЫЙ ТОРГОВЕЦЪ КОТОРЫЙ МНѢ ПРОДАЛЪ  
ВЕЛОСИПЕДЪ СОВѢТУЕТЪ ТЕПЕРЬ МЕНА КУПИТЬ  
МОТОСИКЛЕТЪ.**

The same dealer who sold me a bicycle now  
recommends me to buy a motor-cycle.

#### § 69. THE CASES.

I. *The Nominative*.—As in all languages, the nominative is used for the subject of the sentence. It can *never* be governed by any preposition.

II. *The Vocative* has survived only a very few strictly ecclesiastical phrases.

e.g. Бóже	from Богъ God
Господи	from Господь Lord
О́тче	from Оте́цъ Father
Христé	from Христóсь Christ
Кня́же	from Князь Prince
Иисýсе	from Иисýсь Jesus
Сýне	from Сынъ the Son
Царю́	from Царь Tsar
Влады́ко	from Влады́ка Lord

In modern Russian the nominative takes its place.

III. *The Accusative* is properly the case to denote the direct object; e.g. Jack (nominative) built a house (accusative) Ива́нъ постро́илъ домъ.

However, in modern Russian, except in the singular of the second declension, special accusative forms no longer exist. [v. § 13.]

Hence a rule has sprung up that, *except* for nouns of the second declension in the singular, the objective case shall be the genitive whenever the object is a living being; also, without any exception, whenever the sentence is negative (in which event the genitive is really partitive; e.g. "I did not see him" is equivalent to "I saw nothing *of* him" \*). In every case the nominative form is used.

e.g. Принесѣ сюда́ я́блоки.  
Bring the apples here.

Приведѣ за́втра тво́его дру́га.  
Bring your friend to-morrow.

---

\* Cf. in modern Spanish the use of *a* when the object is a person, e.g. "él conduzo *a* Juan" he brought John.

Я не видѣлъ чемодана.  
I did not see the portmanteau.  
Она не нашла лошади.  
She did not find the horse.  
Никогда не поймаешь рыбы.  
You never catch a fish.  
Я привёл двух лошадей.  
I have brought two horses.

Besides this very limited use as the objective case, this accusative case, but never its genitive substitute, is found with the following meaning: to indicate duration in space or time.

e.g. Я ждалъ тебя всё утро, целый день, всю ночь,  
всю недѣлю, полчаса.

I was waiting for you all the morning, the  
whole day, all the night, all the week, half  
an hour.

Я гулялъ три часа и прошёлъ шесть вёрстъ.

I walked for three hours and went six versts.

Я прошёлъ всё разстояніе между Варшавой  
и Краковомъ.

I went all the distance between Warsaw and  
Cracow.

Лётчикъ пролетѣлъ половину пути къ нашему  
помѣстью.

The airman flew half the way to our country  
house.

#### IV. *The Genitive.*

In modern Russian the genitive is used for a variety of purposes. The simple genitive indicates the relationship of possession between two substantives.



In English there are two methods of indicating the genitive: the possessive case in *s*, and the preposition *of*.

(i) The simple genitive is used in three distinct ways: ( $\alpha$ ) subjective, ( $\beta$ ) objective, ( $\gamma$ ) defining.

e.g. ( $\alpha$ ) Wilson's house, i.e. Wilson has a house.

(In such cases an active verb may be substituted.)

Cæsar's hatred, i.e. Cæsar hates.

( $\beta$ ) Henry IV.'s assassin, i.e. Henry IV. *was* assassinated.

The torpedoing of the *Formidable*, i.e. the *Formidable* was torpedoed. (I.e. a passive verb may be substituted.)

( $\gamma$ ) A man of great talent, i.e. a greatly talented man.

In the last case an adjective may be substituted, and such phrases are really *inversions* of adjectives.

These subjective and objective genitives may be compounded.

e.g. U 21's torpedoing of the *Formidable*, i.e. U 21 torpedoed the *Formidable*.

In other languages there is great ambiguity on this score. In Latin the genitive is used both subjectively and objectively: thus "Cæsar's odium" may mean either that Cæsar hates, or that Cæsar is hated; so, too, in French, "la haine de César."

In English there are irregular attempts to distinguish by means of the two forms, e.g. "Cæsar's hatred," or "the hatred of Cæsar."

Lastly, a subjective or objective genitive may be general or particular, permanent or casual. In the former event, an adjective can in very many cases be substituted.

e.g. God's love = the Divine love.

The king's banner = the royal banner.

But one does not speak (except jokingly) of the "royal pocket-handkerchief" or "the 'divine' love (of Zeus) for Semele."

In Russian we find the simplicity of French with the accuracy attempted by English, which has a rich stock of adjectival forms.

(1) *Subjective genitives* (nearly always possessive).

When *general*, the adjective of the governing noun is used; when *particular*, the genitive.

e.g. Нога слона раздавила череп тигра.

The elephant's leg shattered the tiger's skull.

(Possessive genitive.)

Нога слона почти безъ волосъ.

The elephant's leg is almost hairless.

(Generic genitive.)

Слоновая кость стоитъ дорого.

Ivory [literally, elephant's bone] is dear.

Кавальеръ, убійца Генріха четвёртаго.

Cavillac, the assassin of Henry IV.

(Objective.)

Иоанновы [наёмные] убійцы.

Ivan (the Terrible's) [hired] assassins.

(Subjective.)

Пѣтъкины дни тяну́лись одноо́бразно.

Pétya's days dragged on monotonously.

(Subjective and general.)

Имени́ны Госуда́ря.

The Emperor's birthday (as a mere fact).

Госуда́ревы имени́ны.

The Emperor's birthday (generalized, e.g. as a public holiday).

Зака́тъ со́лнца.

Sunset (as a particular fact on a certain day).

Со́лнечный зака́тъ.

Sunset (as a natural phenomenon).

Солда́тская свирѣ́пость.

Soldiers' savagery (in general).

*But* Свирѣ́пость солда́тъ.

The soldiers' savagery (in particular).

Вхо́дь въ дво́рець.\*

The entrance of the palace (in particular).

*But* Дво́рцо́вые вхо́ды стро́го охра́няются солда́тами.

Palace entrances are strictly guarded by soldiers (in general).

Доро́га (or шоссе́) къ Москвѣ́; отъ Москвѣ́.

The Moscow high-road (direction to or from).

---

\* I.e. in a direction; cf. English "the entrance into the station." But in French only "l'entrée de la gare," "la route de Versailles,"

Москóвскія доро́ги о́чень хоро́шій.

The Moscow roads are very fine.

Морскóе дно.

The bottom of the sea (generally).

Дно мóря.

The bottom of the sea (particularly).

Я жи́лъ въ отцо́вскомъ до́мѣ.

I lived in my father's house (with my parents).

Я жи́лъ въ до́мѣ отца́.

I lived in my father's house (i.e. his, not mine or Mr. Smith's).

(2) *Objective genitives.*

These, too, may be general or particular, but the word in the genitive cannot be adjectivally expressed.

However, Russian avoids ambiguity by using the genitive or any other case with a suitable preposition, e.g. such as would be required by the verb corresponding to the governing noun.

e.g. Крестья́нская любóвь къ пёстрымъ украше́ніямъ.

The peasant love of gaudy ornaments  
(general proposition).

Любóвь это́го мужчи́ны къ же́нщинамъ.

This man's love of woman (in particular).

Не́нависть къ Цéзарю.

The hatred of Cæsar (felt against Cæsar).

(Contrast не́нависть Цéзаря the hate Cæsar felt.)

У него́ сильная́ любóвь къ́ иску́ству.

He has a great love of art.

Уби́йство Эдуа́рда второ́го.

The murder of Edward II.

Наде́жды Пёти на повыше́нія.

Peter's hopes of promotion (in particular).

(Пётины in general.)

Разска́зчикъ́ э́той ска́зки.

The narrator of this fairy tale.

Ска́зочный ры́царь.

A fairy knight.

*In conclusion.*—(1) The possessive or other adjectival form must be substituted for the noun in the genitive in all phrases, where the sense is generalized.

(2) When the genitive is objective, the relationship is usually more closely defined by a proper preposition; but the possessive adjective is almost always inadmissible.

(3) In Russian, except for the proclitic pronouns *е́го, е́й, ихъ*, the genitive always *follows* the noun.

(4) The possessive adjective is *also* used to avoid a *succession* of genitives.

e.g. Моги́ла Вѣры нахо́дилась въ́ глуби́нѣ́ кля́дбища.

Vera's grave was at the bottom of the cemetery.

But По́дробности Вѣриной́ сме́рти.

The details of Vera's death (*"de la mort de Véra"*).

(ii) There exists a partitive genitive [v. § 24 (1)] in "y" with some nouns of the second declension,

and a distinction is made which can only be learnt by practice; generally speaking, when quantity, not quality, is implied, the form in "y" is preferred to that in "a."

e.g. Пода́йте мнѣ ча́ю.

Give me some tea (*donnez-moi du thé*).

Два фунта са́хару.

Two pounds of sugar.

У насъ есть два сорта ча́я.

We have two sorts of tea.

(iii) The genitive (and similarly the dative) frequently replaces the English nominative, in the impersonal constructions, for which the Russian language has a predilection.

e.g. За́втра, мо́жетъ-быть менѣ не бу́детъ здѣсь.

To-morrow, may-be I shall not be here;  
literally, "there will not be of me here."

Мнѣ не хо́чется спать.

I do not want to go to sleep.

Его́ нѣтъ до́ма.

He is not at home.

(iv) The genitive is replaced by the dative, in many instances, of ownership or possession.

e.g. Цѣна́ э́тимъ ло́шадямъ двѣсти рублѣй.

The price of these horses is 200 roubles.

Онъ мнѣ ста́рый другъ.

He is an old friend.

Such sentences are really instances of the *dativus commodi*.

(v) The genitive is used after comparatives  
[cf. § 38, V.]

e.g. Дѣдѣ моложе своей племянницы.

The uncle is younger than his niece.

Россія въ семнадцать разъ больше Франціи.

Russia is seventeen times bigger than France.

(vi) The genitive is the objective case, as stated  
in § 69, III.

(vii) The genitive is used after the adjectives and  
verbs denoting *fulness, worthiness, deprivation, fear, desire,*  
*expectancy, and value.*

e.g. Жизнь полна́ горя.

Life is full of sorrow.

Онъ достоинъ наказанія.

He deserves to be punished.

Вашъ вопросъ касается выше-изложенныхъ  
пунктовъ.

Your question touches points previously  
defined.

Я прошу́ вашего прощénія.

I beg for your forgiveness.

Онъ лишился́ жизни.

He deprived himself of life (committed  
suicide).

Судъ лишилъ Петра́ Ивановича всѣхъ правъ  
состоянія.

The court deprived Peter Ivánovič of all  
rights of position (civil rights).

Всѣ люди желаютъ здоровья.

Everybody desires health.

Я боюсь гро́ма и мо́лнии.  
I fear thunder and lightning.  
Это сто́ит де́негъ.  
This costs money.

But if the price is stated, the accusative.

e.g. Бума́га сто́ит три ру́бли пу́дъ.  
Paper costs three roubles a *pud*.  
Ни́когда́ не о́жидаль тако́го сча́стья.  
I never expected such luck.

(viii) To denote *dates on which*.

e.g. Третья́го дня́ А́нна умерла́.  
On the day before yesterday Ann died.  
Шестна́дцата́го де́кабръ.  
On the 16th December.

(ix) In all cases where the object of the verb is impliedly partitive, i.e. the word "some" might be added, or when in French the "partitive article" *du, des*, would be used.

e.g. Принесите́ ви́на. Bring some wine here.  
Apportez du vin.

So, too, after *all* words of quantity.

e.g. ма́ло little, немно́го a little, дово́льно enough, etc.

(x) As in Latin to denote *descriptions*.

e.g. Онъ челове́къ желе́зной насто́йчивости.  
He is a man of iron persistence (will).  
Пётръ Вели́кій былъ высо́каго ро́ста.  
Peter the Great was a man of great height.  
Онъ былъ тогда́ шестиде́сяти лѣтъ.  
He was then sixty years old.  
(Or, ему́ было́ тогда́ шестьдеся́тъ лѣтъ.)



V. *The Dative,*

As in other languages, the dative marks the personal relation or effect.

e.g. **Мнѣ** полезно читать по-ру́сски.

It is useful to me to read Russian.

The dative is also extensively used instead of the genitive. [v. § 69, IV. (iv).]

As in Latin, French, German, and other languages, many verbs which in English take a direct object are intransitive and take the dative.

e.g. **грози́ть кому́** threaten

**удивля́ться чему́** be surprised

**зави́довать кому́** or **чему́** envy

**смѣ́яться чему́** to rejoice at a thing (but

**смѣ́яться надъ кѣмъ** of a person)

**вѣ́рить кому́** or **чему́** believe (but **вѣ́ровать**

**въ Го́да** believe in God)

Other instances of verbs requiring a dative are:—

**жа́ловаться кому́ на кого́** to complain to A of B  
**моли́ться кому́ за что́** to pray to someone for something

**кла́няться кому́** to greet (to bow down to)

**мсти́ть кому́ за что́** to take vengeance on somebody for something

**напоми́нать что́ кому́** to remind somebody of something

**учи́ть кого́ чему́** to teach somebody something

**учи́ться чему́** to learn something

But only practice can supply a full knowledge of such usages.

e.g. Чемъ вы смѣетесь?

What are you making merry of?

Я вѣрю только математическимъ доказатель-  
ствамъ.

I believe only mathematical proofs.

Я смѣюсь надъ вашимъ высокомеріемъ.

I smile at your arrogance.

Отсюда грозить мы будемъ Шве́ду.

From this spot we shall threaten the Swede.

Мы удивились его ско́рому возвращенію.

We were astonished at his swift return.

Я завидую вашему богатству.

I envy your wealth.

Я завидую Ротшильду.

I envy Rothschild.

## VI. *The Instrumental.*

This case denotes the *instrument by which* something is done, or the *agent by whom* something is done.

Thus :—(1) It is used after passive verbs.

e.g. Царь былъ помазанъ архіепіскопомъ.

The Tsar was anointed by the archbishop.

Царь былъ помазанъ мѣромъ.

The Tsar was anointed with the chrism.

(2) It also denotes the means by which a thing is done or made.

e.g. Деревья рубать топорами.

Trees are cleft with axes.

(3) It is used predicatively (like the dative in Latin) after verbs of becoming, or *быть* in the past tense.

e.g. *Иванъ былъ моимъ слугою.*

John used to be my servant.

*Онъ сдѣлался больнымъ.*

He made himself ill.

Hence such irregular concords may arise as: *онъ называлъ меня дуракомъ* he called me a fool.

(4) It is used to denote the mode or manner where we in English should say "like . . ."

e.g. *Орёлъ летѣлъ стрѣлою.*

The eagle flew like an arrow.

*Онъ воображаетъ себя великимъ государемъ.*

He fancies himself a mighty emperor.

(5) The instrumental is also used with words of measure.

e.g. *Онъ продолжалъ идти мѣрнымъ шагомъ.*

He continued to go at a regular pace.

*Море здѣсь глубиною въ десять сажень.*

The sea is here 10 sazens deep.

*Температура больного повѣсилась двумя градусами.*

The patient's temperature has gone up two degrees.

*But Этого сада на аршинъ шире твоего.*

This garden is an aršin broader than yours.

*Моё яблоко въ двадцать разъ слаще твоего.*

My apple is twenty times sweeter than that one.

(6) The instrumental is used with words of quality.

e.g. *Этотъ тюремщикъ добръ душою.*

This gaoler is kindly in soul (has a kindly soul).

(7) The instrumental is used to denote *time in which* something happens; e.g. *зимѡю* in the winter, *весною* in the spring, *ночью* at night, *утромъ* in the morning.

(8) Many verbs, especially those denoting *using, governing, naming*, are followed by the instrumental. These can only be acquired by practice.

Such are: • *пользоваться* to use

*называться* to be called

*владѣть* to govern

*гордиться* to boast of

*жертвовать* to sacrifice

*править* to guide

*слыть* to be reputed as

*избираться* to be elected

e.g. *Солдаты жертвуютъ жизнью за отчизну.*

Soldiers sacrifice their lives for their country.

*Я горжусь своими родителями.*

I boast of my parents.

*Его назначили (избрали) опекуномъ.*

They have appointed (chosen) him as guardian.

*Онъ не владѣетъ своимъ роднымъ языкомъ.*

He does not understand his own language.

## VII. *The Locative.*

In modern Russian this case is never used except with the prepositions *при, въ, о, на, по*. Hence it is often called the prepositional.



## Those governing Objective and Instrumental :—

	за				за	Prepositions never used as Verbal Prefixes.		
						безъ	черезъ	
подъ					подъ			
предъ					предъ			

## Governing Objective and Locative :—

въ						въ		
на						на		
о						о		

## Governing Objective, Dative, Locative :—

по				по		по		
----	--	--	--	----	--	----	--	--

## Governing Objective, Genitive, Instrumental :—

съ		съ				съ		
----	--	----	--	--	--	----	--	--

## Governing Genitive and Instrumental :—

		межъ				межъ		
--	--	------	--	--	--	------	--	--

\* I.e. accusative of inanimate objects ; genitive of animate, excepting the accusative sing. in -у, -ю of nouns in -а, -я.

## § 70. TABLE OF PREPOSITIONS AND PARTICLES.

Governing one case only:—

Object.* v. § 69, III.		Genitive.		Dative.		Instr.	Loc.	Verbal Prefixes.	
Simple.	Adverbial.	Simple.	Adverbial.	Simple.	Adverbial.	Simple.	Simple.	Used with Nouns and Verbs.	With Verbs only.
про	сквозь	безъ	близъ	мимо	къ	вопреки	надъ		
черезъ		до	вдоль	около				въ	подъ
		изъ	вмѣсто	позади				до	предъ
		изъ-за	внутри	подлѣ				за	при
		изъ-подъ	внѣ	послѣ				изъ	про
		отъ	вокругъ	ради				на	съ
		у	возлѣ	сверхъ				надъ	у
			для	противъ				о	
			крошѣ	среди				отъ	
			кругомъ					по	

## Those governing Objective and Instrumental :—

	за				за	Prepositions never used as Verbal Prefixes.	
						безъ	черезъ
подъ					подъ		
предъ					предъ	къ	

## Governing Objective and Locative :—

въ						въ	
на						на	
о						о	

## Governing Objective, Dative, Locative :—

по				по		по	
----	--	--	--	----	--	----	--

## Governing Objective, Genitive, Instrumental :—

съ	съ				съ		
----	----	--	--	--	----	--	--

## Governing Genitive and Instrumental :—

					мѣру		
--	--	--	--	--	------	--	--

\* I.e. accusative of inanimate objects ; genitive of animate, excepting the accusative sing. in -у, -ю of nouns in -а, -я.



## § 71. THE PREPOSITIONS.

*Preliminary.*

I. In order further to assert the relationships of nouns and verbs, as in other languages the cases are not sufficient. They have to be more accurately and extensively defined by means of prepositions.

II. Prepositions and particles are either simple or adverbial, e.g. in English "by" and "beside."

III. Most simple prepositions are compounded with verbs; but *чрезъ* through, *къ* to, *безъ* without, cannot be thus used; nor are *воз-* up, *вы-* out, *неп-* again, *не-* in excess, used except with verbs.

IV. Most prepositions govern only one case, some govern two, and some three.

V. The prepositions and the cases they govern are all stated in the Table § 70.

VI. Prepositions governing the objective take the accusative (or nominative) of inanimate things, and the genitive of living things [v. § 69, III.].

In a few instances only the older practice survives of a preposition taking the accusative with nouns denoting a living being; e.g. the idiomatic use of *въ* in *въ гóсти*, *въ нáньки*, to be a guest, nurse, etc.

VII. Monosyllabic prepositions preceding monosyllabic nouns (including under this designation dissyllabic nouns in liquids, e.g. *гóродь*, *бéрегъ* [v. § 5 (5)])

or dissyllabic nouns of the second declension often accent the preposition, especially in adverbial phrases.

e.g. на полъ on to the floor  
на воду on to the water

In older Russian this rule was much more general.  
[v. § 80.]

## § 72. PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING THE ACCUSATIVE.

Three prepositions govern only the accusative:  
черезъ (or чрезъ), про, сквозь.

про means "for," "concerning."

e.g. Всякъ про себя, а Господь про всѣхъ.  
Each for himself, but the Lord for all.

Про кого говоришь?  
Of whom are you speaking?

Combined with verbs it gives the idea of thoroughness.

e.g. Прочитатьъ to read through.  
сквозь right through.

e.g. Гвоздь сквозь доску прошёлъ.  
The nail has gone right through (pierced) the board.

Онъ пройдётъ невредимымъ сквозь огонь и воду.  
He will pass through fire and water unscathed.

Смотрѣть на что сквозь пальцы.  
To look through the finger (i.e. overlook).

Онъ прошёлъ сквозь огонь и воду и мѣдныя трубы.

He passed through fire, water, and brazen tubes [proverb: i.e. every danger] [or чрезъ ...].

черезъ through and across.

e.g. Черезъ рѣку across the river.

Черезъ стекло видно.

One can see [видно it is visible] through glass.

Черезъ него многие пострадали.

Through him many have suffered.

Я у него буду черезъ недѣлю.

I shall be with him in one week.

### § 73 (1). PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING THE GENITIVE ONLY.

*These prepositions always govern the genitive; not merely the objective case.*

безъ without.

e.g. Безъ денегъ without money.

Безъ надежды without hope.

близъ\* near.

e.g. Близъ города near the town.

Близъ моего мужа стояла Настасья.

Nastasya was standing near my husband.

вдоль along.

e.g. Вдоль улицы along the street.

вмѣсто† instead of.

e.g. Вмѣсто веселія горе было.

It was woe instead of joy.

внутри\* inside.

e.g. Внутри чемодана inside the portmanteau.

внѣ\* outside.

e.g. Внѣ Европы outside Europe.

\* Whence adjectives ближій, внутреннй, внѣшнй.

† Not to be confused with the adverb вмѣстѣ together; e.g. вмѣстѣ съ тобою together with you.

**вѣзлѣ** beside.

e.g. **Вѣзлѣ пѣчи** beside the stove.

**вокругъ** or **кругомъ** round.

e.g. **Вокругъ цѣркви** round the church.

**для** for the purpose of.

e.g. **Для лѣченія** for the purpose of being healed.

**до** defines the limit "up to which."

e.g. **До старости дожилъ.**

He lived up to old age.

**Читайъ отъ начала до конца.**

Read from the beginning to the end.

**Отъ Лондона до Паріжа.**

From London to Paris.

**До полудня.**

Until mid-day *or* before mid-day.

**До Рождества Христова.**

V.c., i.e. up to *or* before the birth of Christ.

**До Царя Николая Николаевича.**

Before Tsar Nicholas Nikoláyevič.

**Ихъ было до десяти.**

There were up to (*or* about) ten of them.

**до** in compound verbs gives a sense of finishing ;

e.g. **дочитатьъ** to read to the end.

**изъ** from, out of.

e.g. **Изъ огня** out of the fire.

**Изъ дружбы** out of friendship.

**изъ** is scarcely ever used in measurements of time

(*v. отъ*).

**изъ-за** up out of.

e.g. **Солнце вышло изъ-за лѣсу.**

The sun rose out of the wood.

**Изъ-за ней** "Thanks to her . . ."

**изъ-подъ** from under.

e.g. **Изъ-подъ меня взяли стулъ.**

They took my chair from under me.

**изъ** in composition with verbs retains its original meaning.

Before heavy consonants it becomes **изо**; e.g. **изожда́тъ** to await.

Before soft vowels it retains the **ъ**; e.g. **изъѣденный** (**мо́лю**) moth-eaten.

Before unvoiced consonants it is written and sounded **ис**; e.g. **истра́титъ** to squander.

**кро́мѣ** besides.

e.g. **Кро́мѣ такихъ примѣровъ.**

Besides such examples.

**Кро́мѣ лошадей онъ завёлъ ещё автомоби́ль.**

Besides his horses he brought a motor.

**Кро́мѣ того́** in addition to this.

The "gerundive" or undeclined participle, **исключая́**, is used absolutely to mean "except, excepting"; e.g. **исключая́ англича́нъ никако́и наро́дъ свободо́нъ** excepting the English no nation is free.

**ми́мо** past an object.

e.g. **Орёлъ летѣ́лъ ми́мо моего́ са́да.**

The eagle flew past my garden.

о́коло about.

e.g. О́коло двора́ round about the courtyard.

О́коло пяти́ часо́въ about five o'clock.

вокру́гъ signifies rather "encircling" all the way round.

e.g. Вокру́гъ моего́ дома́ фрукто́вый садъ.

There is an orchard all round my house.

отъ out of, from.

e.g. Отъ княже́нія Влади́мирова.

From the time of Vladímir's reign.

Я получи́лъ подáрокъ отъ ма́тери.

I received a present from my mother.

Я покрасне́лъ отъ стыда́.

I blushed for shame.

отъ, as distinguished from изъ, indicates the source whence, rather than motion whence.

e.g. Доро́га отъ Москвы́ до Петрогра́да.

The road from Moscow to Petrograd.

*But* Онъ пріѣ́халъ изъ Москвы́.

He arrived from Moscow.

отъ corresponds more with the Latin *ab*; изъ with *ex*.

When compounded with verbs, отъ, like изъ, retains its meaning, and changes to ото, отъ.

e.g. Оторва́ться to tear oneself free.

Отѣ́хать to drive away.

Отѣ́здъ departure.

пóдлѣ means the same as во́злѣ.

позади́ behind.

e.g. Позади́ дере́вни behind the village.

послѣ after (in time or order).

- e.g. Послѣ ухѣда отъ дѣлности.  
After retirement from service.  
Послѣ королѣ вошелъ егѣ слуга.  
After the king his servant entered.

прѣтивъ against or opposite to.

- e.g. Прѣтивъ дворца стоитъ собѣръ.  
Opposite to the palace stands the cathedral.  
Россѣ бѣрется прѣтивъ Нѣмцевъ.  
Russia is fighting against the Germans.

ради for the sake of.

- e.g. Ради твоѣй мѣтери.  
For the sake of your mother.

сверхъ besides.

- e.g. Сверхъ разума beyond reason.  
Сверхъ жалованья, получаетъ награду.  
In addition to a salary, he gets an emolument.  
Сверхъ того furthermore.

средѣ or посреди in the middle of.

- e.g. Посреди острова in the middle of the island.

Other adverbial phrases are also used with the genitive, but need not be noticed here.

у means "at," "by" (of place).

- e.g. У дѣла at work.  
У ногъ корѣ at one's feet.

у with the verb *есть* replaces the verb "to have."

e.g. У меня *есть* хлебъ. [v. § 87].

I have a loaf.

У себя ли баринъ ?

Is your master at home ?

у with the personal pronouns, or proper names, has much the same force as the Latin *apud* or the French *chez*.

e.g. У Петровыхъ всегда хорошій обѣдъ.

They dine well at the Petróvs.

In composition with verbs its use can hardly be profitably defined.

#### § 73 (2). THE PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING THE DATIVE.

Of these there are only two.

къ can be used with some nouns to indicate approximate time.

e.g. Къ вѣчеру toward evening.

Otherwise къ merely amplifies the ordinary meaning of the dative "to" or "for."

e.g. Къ бѣреу to the bank.

Пришлю книгу къ нему.

I will send the book to him.

къ is never combined with verbs. When used with nouns, the consonant к is merely sounded in front, like l' and d' in French : "l'âme," "d'autres." Before dentals and gutturals къ is softened to х in pronunciation ; e.g. къ тому is sounded хтому ; къ дому, хдому.



Before heavy initial consonants **къ** is sounded, and is sometimes written, **ко**.

e.g. **Ко двору́** to the courtyard.

Similar rules apply to **въ** and **съ**, which may be written and sounded **во** and **со**.

**Вопре́ки** in spite of.

**Вопре́ки егó старáнiямъ** despite his endeavours.

#### § 74. PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING THE INSTRUMENTAL.

**надъ** means "above," "over."

e.g. **Надъ землёю** over the earth.

**Братъ верхъ надъ кѣмъ (чѣмъ)** to overcome someone.

**Бо́жья во́ля надо мно́ю.**

God's will over me.

**Бѣда́ виситъ надъ егó голово́й.**

Sorrow hangs over his head.

**ме́жду** may be added to this paragraph, as it is only occasionally used with the genitive. It means "between."

e.g. **Сидѣ́тъ ме́жду двухъ сту́льевъ — положéние Румы́нiи.**

Sitting on the fence [between two chairs]—  
Roumania's situation.

**Ме́жду двумя дере́вьями бы́ло окно́.**

There was a window between two trees.

It can also have a derived meaning, "among."

## § 75. PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING THE LOCATIVE.

One preposition, **при**, governs the locative and no other case. **при** originally meant "at."

e.g. **При до́мѣ** near, by the house.

**При ко́мѣ** in the presence of.

**При свидѣ́теляхъ** before witnesses.

**При Никола́ѣ Алекса́ндровичѣ.**

In the reign (*or* time) of Nicholas Aleksándrovič.

**Онъ при заво́дѣ.**

He works in the factory.

**Онъ былъ адю́тантомъ при Ско́белевѣ.**

He was adjutant to Skóbolev.

Also causal—

e.g. **При бога́тствѣ** возно́симся.

In prosperity we enhance ourselves.

The meaning of **при**, when compounded with verbs, is best learnt by practice; no rule can be conveniently stated.

§ 76. **подъ**, **предъ**, and **за**.

These govern the accusative and instrumental; the former when motion is implied, the latter when a state of rest is implied (cf. *in* in Latin or German).

I. **за** primarily means "behind," also "beyond."

With the accusative:—

e.g. **Ѣ́хать за гра́ницу.**

To travel beyond the frontier, i.e. abroad.

**Мнѣ да́вно за́ сорокъ лѣтъ.**

I am long past forty years old.

За́ десять лѣтъ своѣй слѹжбы пріобрѣ́лъ большѹю  
опы́тность.

In ten years' service he gained great experi-  
ence.

Notice also:—

Мы сади́лись за сто́лъ.

We were sitting down at the table.

Also with verbs of "holding," "grasping."

e.g. Его́ взяли́ за́ руку.

They seized him by the hand.

Меня́ держа́ли за плéчи.

They held me by the shoulders.

In combination with что, за means "what a . . . !"

e.g. Что́ за шумъ! what a noise!

Also "for the sake of."

e.g. Мѹченики́ ѹмерли́ за́ истину́.

The martyrs died for truth.

Моли́сь за́ отца́.

Pray for your father.

And "in price."

e.g. Прода́лъ кни́гу за́ четы́ре рубля́.

I sold a book for four roubles.

With the instrumental:—

e.g. Э́тотъ господи́нъ живётъ́ за́ границе́ю.

This gentleman lives abroad.

За́ са́домъ behind the garden.

Я сидѣ́лъ за́ столо́мъ.

I sat at the table.

Or "giving the reason."

e.g. За непре́здѣмъ отца мы отложи́ли нашу по́ездку.

On account of my father's non-arrival we postponed our excursion.

За́чѣмъ? why?

Also with verbs of "fetching."

e.g. Меня посла́ли за са́харомъ.

They sent me to fetch the sugar.

за, in composition with verbs, expresses an incipient action [v. § 59, VI.], but sometimes a completed action, e.g. засну́ть go to sleep, запла́тить to pay up; in composition with nouns, expresses "at the back of," "behind"; e.g. за́городный suburban (also при́городъ suburb).

II. подъ properly means "under"; with the accusative implying motion, with the instrumental static.

e.g. Я бро́силъ его́ по́дъ столъ.

I threw him under the table.

Онъ лежи́тъ по́дъ пе́чью.

He is lying under the stove.

In regard to *time*.

e.g. Э́то случи́лось по́дъ вече́рь.

This happened in the evening (cf. Latin *sub vespere*).

Also in derivative senses.

e.g. По́дъ э́тими усло́виями не могу́ подписа́ться.

Under these conditions I cannot give my signature.

III. предъ or пе́редъ means "before" (of place, and of time).

The accusative and instrumental similarly refer to motion or rest.

e.g. Я явился *передъ* судьёй.

I appeared before the judges.

*Передъ* воротами стоять два столба.

In front of the gates there stand two columns.

*Предъ* закономъ всѣ равны.

All are equal before the law.

*Observe* the adverbs *въпереди* in front, *въперёдъ* forward, *напередъ* beforehand.

*подъ* and *предъ*, when compounded with verbs, conserve their meaning.

e.g. <i>поднимать</i>	<i>поднять</i>	raise
<i>подпирать</i>	<i>подпереть</i>	prop up
<i>представать</i>	<i>предстать</i>	stand before
<i>представлять</i>	<i>представить</i>	to present

Like *отъ*, *подъ* and *предъ* keep the *ъ* before soft vowels, and *предъ* changes to *преду* before heavy consonants.

e.g. *Предъявить* to present.

*Предусмотрѣть* to foresee.

*Подъѣдать* to nibble, eat from below.

*Предусмотрѣть* всѣ мелочи.

To foresee all details.

*Предъявить* вексель къ взысканію.

To present a bill for payment.

Онъ *подъѣхалъ* на конѣ.

He came by on horseback.

§ 77. THE PREPOSITIONS **въ**, **о**, AND **на**.

These govern the accusative and locative ; the accusative as usual relating to motion, the locative to a state of rest.

**И**. **въ** primarily means "in." It is sounded as a part of the following word, like **къ** and **съ**, and similarly may, if the following word have heavy initial consonants, be altered to **во**.

**въ** with the *accusative* is primarily "into."

e.g. (1) **Ивѣнъ вошѣлъ въ комнату.**

John went into the room.

**Я ѣздилъ въ Оренбуръ.**

I travelled to Orenbúrg.

(2) It is used in statements of time.

e.g. **Во время путешествія я скучалъ.**

I was bored during the journey.

**Въ пять лѣтъ окончѣ мой трудъ.**

In five years I shall finish my work.

**Въ понедѣльникъ** on Monday.

(Distinguish **по понедѣльникамъ** every Monday.)

**Въ девять часѣвъ** at nine o'clock.

**Трижды въ день** three times a day.

(Distinguish **въ девѣтомъ часѣ** in the ninth hour ;  
i.e. between eight and nine.)

(3) And in statements of price, measure, etc.

e.g. **Дорога въ восемнадцать вѣрстъ.**

A road eighteen versts long.

(4) One idiomatic use with the accusative plural should be remarked, viz. :—

Менѣ звали въ гости.

They invited me as a guest.

Онъ пошёлъ въ офицеры.

He has become an officer.

Постригусь въ монахи.

I shall take the tonsure as a monk.

*In this idiomatic use the accusative, and not the genitive, is used as the objective case [v. § 71, VI.].*

(5) Similarly :—

Сынъ въ отца.

The son is like his father.

*въ* with the *locative* means (1) “in.”

e.g. Баринъ въ столовой.

Master is in the dining-room.

(2) “in,” in measurements of time.

e.g. Въ сентябрѣ мѣсяцѣ in September.

Въ тысяча девятьсотъ пятнадцатомъ году in 1915.\*

(3) “in,” in measurements of distance.

e.g. Моя дѣла отсюда въ трёхъ верстахъ.

My estate is three versts away.

(4) After certain verbs.

e.g. Каяться въ грѣхахъ to repent one's sins.

Признаваться въ ошибокѣ to confess a mistake.

Обвинять кого въ убійствѣ to convict of murder.

---

\* In these phrases *роду* cannot be omitted, and no other *locative* form is admissible.

In composition **въ** conserves its meaning.

e.g. **Входить** to enter.

The original form **во** is kept in some accented adverbs; e.g. **во́сче** altogether. [v. § 80.]

With verbs commencing with a soft vowel **въ** is still hard and written **въ**.

e.g. **Въѣхать** (*vyékhæt'*) to drive in.

II. The preposition **на** primarily means "on."

*With the accusative.*

e.g. (1) **Я ходи́лъ на пло́щадь.**

I went on to the square.

**Па́лъ тумáнь на сы́рую зéмлю.**

A mist fell on the damp earth.

**Я положи́лся на теб́я.**

I relied on you.

(2) In reference to time.

**На четвёртый де́нь** on the fourth day.

**Отпущу́ теб́я на три часа́.**

I will let you go for three hours (до трёхъ часа́ until 3 o'clock).

(3) In reference to the effect produced.

**Ку́шайте на здо́ровье.**

Eat for your health, i.e. may it do you good.

**Я слéдовалъ ему́ на зло́.\***

I followed him to do him hurt.

---

\* От на́ зло.



## (4) "Against," "in respect of."

Я сердѣлся на Григоріа.

I got angry with Gregory.

Не жалу́йся на твоѣго брата.

Do not make complaints with respect to  
(against) your brother.*With the locative.*

e.g. (1) Ва́ша кнѣга на столѣ́.

Your book is on the table.

## (2) In words denoting time.

На Рождество́.

On Christmas day.

## (3) In words indicating the points of the compass.

На се́верѣ́ in the North.

(a) Мой братъ женился на французкѣ́  
племянница́ которой вы́идётъ за́мужъ за  
ру́скаго по́даннаго.My brother has married a Frenchwoman  
whose niece is going to marry a Russian  
subject.

## (b) Игра́ли въ́ карты́.

They were playing cards.

Игра́ли въ́ ша́хматы́.

They were playing chess (i.e. a game).

*But* Игра́ли на скри́пкѣ́.They were playing the violin (the musical  
instrument).

(γ) *Observe* на Русі or въ Россіи in Russia.

(Русь is a poetical form.)

In composition на has no meaning limited enough to be stated in these pages.

III. The preposition о (объ before vowels, обо before very heavy initial consonants) primarily means "on" or "against."

*With the accusative.*

(1) Онъ удáрился о кáмень he hit against a stone

(2) Объ́ эту́ пору́ at this time.

*With the locative.*

(1) Concerning, about.

e.g. Мы говорѣли о твоёмъ несчастіи.

We were speaking of your misfortune.

(2) Of time (when the time is not exactly stated).

e.g. О Пáсхѣ at Easter.

(3) With numerals, when the objects enumerated are constituents of something else, and not accidental.

e.g. Стулъ о трѣхъ нѣжкахъ a chair with three feet.

(But Стѣна́ въ три арші́на a wall 3 aršins high.)

In composition о indicates the completion of the act, and some generality.

e.g. Обой́ти to go round (and survey).

Огляну́ться to glance round.

Before heavy consonants it can take the full form обо; e.g. ободрáть, обди́рать to flay.

Before verbs beginning in soft vowels it is written and sounded *объ*.

e.g. *Объяснить* to explain.

*Объятие, объёмъ*, an embrace—the capacity, contents.

Before verbs beginning with *и, ъ + и* are fused into *ы*; e.g. *обыграть* to beat at play, cf. *сыграть* from *съ + играть* to play (a piece of music or at cards).

As a preposition *объ* is the correct form before words beginning with a vowel, and occasionally *обо* before words with heavy initial consonants.

#### § 78. THE PREPOSITIONS *по* AND *съ*.

I. *по*, with the accusative, states the limit in space or time, or the purpose of the action.

e.g. *По край свѣта* to the edge of the world.

*Обнажи́ ру́ку по́-локоть.*

Bare your arm up to the elbow.

*Мы пробуде́мъ здѣсь по Пасху.*

We shall stay here till Easter.

*По сіе́ время́ я ниче́го не слы́халъ.*

Up to now I have heard nothing.

*По вѣ́къ свой (или по сме́рть) не забу́ду.*

I will not forget (for all my life) up to my death.

*Я шёлъ въ лѣсъ по мали́ну.*

I went into the wood (to gather) raspberries.

*Пошли́ по́ воду.*

Send for water.

*Distributively*, *по два, по три, по четыре* [v. § 62, I. and IV. (2)].

*Notice*—по ту сторону, по правую (руку), по лѣвую, that side, to the right, to the left.

по with the dative indicates extensive space, in which something happens.

e.g. (1) По горамъ over the hills.

По городу through the town.

Плыть по морю to sail the seas.

Эта трава растётъ по оврагамъ.

This herb grows in the ravines.

(2) Distributively—

По утрамъ every morning.

По пяти in fives (and with every number, except два, три, четыре). [v. § 62, IV.(2).]

По ночамъ every night.

По средамъ every Wednesday.

(3) “According to.”

По-моему\* in my opinion.

По старому in the old-fashioned way.

По чину according to rank.

Почему? why?

Потому что because.

по with the locative.

(1) With words of time, means “after.”

e.g. Потомъ thereupon.†

По рождествѣ after Christmas.

По Петръ Великомъ after Peter the Great.

\* In this single phrase моему is accented моему. So, too, по твоёму, своему. Thus:—

По моему проёссу вышло по-моему.

My law-suit came off to my liking.

† Whence потомки, потомство descendants,

## (2) "On account of."

e.g. Жена по мужу называется.

A woman bears her husband's name.

По кому вы въ траурѣ?

For whom are you in mourning?

по in composition confers a diminutive sense to the verb [v. § 59, VI.], e.g. поглядывать to glance here and there; or indicates the completion of the actions, e.g. побить to smite down, послать to send at last.

II. (1) съ with the accusative is used in general measurements of space and time.

e.g. Рублѣй съ пятюкъ издержалъ.

I spent about five roubles.

Тамъ я прожилъ съ мѣсяцъ.

I stayed there about a month.

Онъ ростомъ съ отца.

He is about as tall as his father.

Вёрстъ со сто (съ сотню) будетъ.

It will be about 100 versts away.

(2) съ with the genitive has the primal meaning "down from."

e.g. Онъ сошёлъ съ платформы.

He left the platform.

(изъ implies rather "away from," in space: e.g. поѣздъ двинулся изъ Москвы the train moved out of Moscow.)

Она сошла съ ума.

She has gone mad (literally, out of her mind).

Съ тѣхъ поръ from that time.

Жду со дня на день.

I waited from day to day

It may also have a causal meaning, like *отъ*.

e.g. *Съ тоскѣ* from melancholy.

*съ* with the instrumental has an entirely different meaning, i.e. "with," "accompanying."

e.g. *Я придѣ съ супру́гою (супру́гой).*

I will arrive with my wife.

*Онъ дѣлалъ это съ радостью.*

He was doing this with pleasure.

*Онъ человѣкъ съ умомъ.*

He is a man with sense.

*Совсѣмъ* quite.

*Кто говорилъ съ Кузьмой?*

Who was speaking to Kuz'ma?

In composition *съ* can have either the meaning "from" or "with," e.g. *снимать* to take away, *сѣздить* to travel away; or *соединять* to unite, *сочинить* to compose, *сдѣлать* to finish doing.

Before soft vowels *съ* is retained entire, e.g. *съѣдать* to devour; or, before *и*, amalgamates, e.g. *сыскать* to search (*съ-искать*); or remains as *со*, e.g. *соединить*.

#### § 79. THE VERBAL PREFIXES *воз*, *вы*, *пере*, *пре*, *разъ*.

*воз* adds the sense of "up" to a verb.

Before unvoiced consonants it is written and sounded *вос*, e.g. *воспитать* to educate.

Before verbs beginning with *с* + a consonant it is, however, written *воз* and sounded *вос*, e.g. *возстаніе* insurrection.

In Old Slavonic the form was *възъ*, hence in modern Russian *въ* and *воз* are also met with.

e.g. *взлетѣть* to fly up  
*вздуѣть цѣны* to inflate prices

Or before heavy consonants—

e.g. *вздираѣть*, but *взодраѣть* to tear up  
*взираѣть* (for *вззираѣть*), but *воззриѣть* to look up  
 (Cf. *сжечь*,\* but *сожгѣ* to burn utterly.)

Before verbs beginning with soft vowels the *з* is pronounced and written hard.

e.g. *възъѣзжати* to drive up

As with other similar prepositions, *ъ* + *и* after is fused into *и*.

e.g. *возъ* + *имѣти* becomes *возымѣти* to conceive  
 (doubts, fears, etc.)

Similarly *разъ*-, *разъ*-, *разы*-, *разо*-, *рас*-.  
*вы* probably means “out,” and signifies the completion of an act.

e.g. *выболѣти* to become utterly ill  
*выбѣжать* (perfective) *выбѣгати* (imperfective)  
 to run out [v. § 59, IV.]  
*выгнати* drive out, *выгонѣти* (imperfective)

*вы* always takes the tonic accent except as stated in § 59, I. (3), II., and IV., when the imperfective is the

---

\* Sounded *žžeč*.

iterative of the simple verb, in which the imperfective retains the original accent.

e.g. **вы́просить** to question, **выпра́шивать**

**вы́гадать** to guess, **выга́дывать**

**пере** implies repetition, or change.

e.g. **переду́мать** to reconsider

**переби́ть** to kill many, to massacre

**перебы́вать** to be in many places

**передопро́сить** to re-examine

**перела́мывать** to break to pieces

**перепи́сать** to copy

**пересма́тривать** to review, survey ; **пересмо́треть**  
revision

**пре** implies excellence, and is nearly the same as **предъ** ; with adjectives it forms a superlative.

e.g. **прелюбе́зный** very kindly

**превыша́ть** to surpass

**презира́ть** to despise

But it is often merely a bye-form of **пере**.

e.g. **превраща́ть, преврати́ть** to transform

**разъ** has a motion of scattering or dissipation.

e.g. **растека́ть** to flow (in various directions)

**разстана́вливать** to station people apart

**разы́гривать** to play out to the end

**разъ́ездъ** a departure (of many people in  
different directions)

**разува́ть** to take off one's shoes

**разсѣ́вать** to sow (scatter seed)

**разсма́тривать** to survey all round



### § 80. THE ACCENTUATION OF PREPOSITIONS AND PARTICLES.

The general rule is that, as in other languages, prepositions are proclitics, i.e. atonic words pronounced with their noun, which is accented; e.g. "in-the-house," "on-the-table," "въ до́мѣ," "на сто́лѣ." But in older Russian, and to a slight extent in modern Russian, certain of the simple prepositions—not the adverbial prepositions—when used with monosyllabic or dissyllabic nouns, are accented, the noun becoming the *enclitic*.

e.g. на́ бо́къ on the side

Further, when particles are used in compound verbs, in some cases the particle takes the accent, the verb becoming enclitic. This *only* applies—

- (1) to the prefix вы [v. § 79 and § 59, IV.];
- (2) to monosyllabic verbs [v. § 49 and § 52, (1) and (2)]

and generally only to the past participle passive.

e.g. прожѣть	про́житый	to live through
начать	нача́ль*	to begin
избра́ть	избра́нь	to select
наня́ть	наня́ль and наня́ть	to hire†
назва́ть	назва́нь	called
пода́ть	пода́нный	a subject (of a State)

This list contains some of the most important phrases in which the old accentuation of the preposition

\* But past part. pass. нача́тый.

† So, too, *all* dissyllabic compounds of -ять.

survives. It will be observed the words are nearly all monosyllables, or dissyllables with liquids, such as *бѣрегъ* shore [v. § 5 (5)], or dissyllabic feminines, and that the usage is practically confined to the accusative.

Verbs that accent the preposition are also monosyllabic.

The forms accenting the particle are mostly used in set phrases, like adverbs.

e.g. *на́ бокъ* (or *на бѣ́къ*) to one side  
*на́ берегъ* (or *на бѣ́регъ*) to the shore  
*на́ голо* (of weapons) naked  
*на́ голову* (or *на рѣ́лову*) on to the head  
*на́ душу* (or *на ду́шу*) into the mind  
*на́ землю* (or *на зѣ́млю*) on to the earth  
*на́ зло* (or *на злѣ́*) in despite  
*на́ полъ* on to the floor  
*на́ поле* (or *на по́ле*) on to the field  
*на́ ночь* for a night  
*на́смѣхъ* (to hold up) to ridicule  
*на́чисто* (to wipe) clean

So, too, in verbs.

e.g. *на́нялъ* I hired  
*за́нялъ* (*за́нять*) busied  
*прѣ́данный* devoted  
*прѣ́данный* betrayed  
*избра́нь* selected  
*на́званный* called

Similarly with the *negative* не: *не́ далъ*,  
*не́ брагъ*, *не́ было*, *не́ пилъ*.

*перели́лъ* (or *перели́ль*) overflowed  
*отда́лъ* (*óddal*) he has given away  
*про́жилъ* he has lived through

Other instances are:—

по лу́гу (по лу́гу) over the meadow  
 по морю (по мо́рю) over the sea  
 по бере́гу (по бе́ре́гу) along the bank  
 во́всѣ at all  
 изъ лѣсу out of the wood  
 о́ землю (о зе́млю) against the ground  
 за́ ногу by the leg  
 у́ моря (у мо́ря) by the sea

No very general rule can be stated. In modern Russian the preposition is sometimes accented before simple monosyllabic or dissyllabic nouns, mostly when used with the accusative.

### § 81. THE NUMERALS.

Under this head it is proposed to enumerate some idiomatic uses of the numerals.

#### I. *The date (число), days (дни), etc.*

The days of the week (недѣля) are:—

Понедѣльникъ	Monday (Недѣля, Church Slavonic for Sunday)
Вторникъ	Tuesday
Средá	Wednesday (i.e. the middle)
Четвѣргъ	Thursday (i.e. the fourth day)*
Пятница	Friday (i.e. the fifth day)
Суббóта	Saturday (i.e. the Sabbath)
Воскресѣ́нье	Sunday (literally "Resurrection")
Недѣля	the week

---

\* In ecclesiastical parlance, четвѣро́къ.

The months (мѣсяцъ) are :—

Январь	January	(января, etc., accenting termination)
Февраль	February	(февраля, etc.)
Мартъ	March	(марта, etc.)
Апрѣль	April	(апрѣля, etc.)
Май	May	(мая, etc.)
Іюнь	June	(іюня, etc.)
Іюль	July	(іюля, etc.)
Августъ	August	(августа, etc.)
Сентябрь	September	(сентября, etc.)
Октябрь	October	(октября, etc.)
Ноябрь	November	(ноября, etc.)
Декабрь	December	(декабря, etc.)

The calendar of the Greek Church is still used in Russia, and is now thirteen days behind the Julian or Western calendar.

Instances are given of the use of these words, illustrating the rules.

е.g. Котóрое (какóе) числó у насó сего́дня ?

What is the date to-day ?

Шесты́нацатое января́.

The 16th of January.

Пя́тница двáдцать пята́го (пята́е) ма́рта.

Friday the 25th of March.

*Do not use capitals in designating the days and months.*

When the year is mentioned, the year and number all go into the genitive, unless the day is named.

e.g. Средá (въ средý) тpидцать пёрвое мáрта тýсяча  
восьмь-сòтъ сòрокъ восьмòго гòда.

Wednesday the 31st March 1848.

*But* Девятнáдцатого февралí тýсяча восьмьсòтъ  
шестдесáтъ пёрваго гòда.

The 19th of February 1861.

These would be commonly abbreviated :—

e.g. Средá (въ средý) 31-ое мáрта 1848 г.  
19-го февралí 1861 г.

Generally both dates are indicated.

e.g. 25/12 iii. 15.

II. *Age.* The following instances illustrate the rules :—

Скòлько Ивáшку (Ивáну) лѣтъ ?

How old is Ivásko ?

Какóй вòзраст Áнны Петрòвны ?

How old is Ánna Petròvna ?

Ей шестьдесáтъ лѣтъ.

She is sixty years old.

Она́ родилáсь восьмòго мáя тýсяча восьмьсòтъ  
сòрокъ вторòго гòда.

She was born on the 8th May 1842

Емý идѣтъ двáдцать пёрвый годъ

He is in his twenty-first year.

Мнѣ тpидцать лѣтъ óтроду.

I am thirty years old.

Емý бòльше двáдцати-восьмí лѣтъ

He is over twenty-eight.

Емý ужé зá сорокъ лѣтъ.

He is over forty.

III. In forming compound nouns and adjectives in which the first element is a numeral, the rule is to use the genitive of the numeral, e.g. *двухъ-этажный* two-storeyed; *двугривенникъ*\* twenty copecks; *трѣхъ-головый змѣй* a three-headed dragon; *четырёхсотый* the 400th; *двадцатилѣтній* twenty years old; *пятиугольникъ* pentagon, etc.; except *тысячелѣтне* millennium, and compounds with *сто*, such as *столѣтне* century.

#### IV. *The time of day.*

The Russian for hour is *часъ*; for a watch or clock *часы* (plural).

The following sentences give the rules:—

*Который тепѣрь часъ на вашихъ часахъ?*

What time is it by your watch?

*Сколько тепѣрь времени?* What is the time now?

*Сколько пробилъ?* What time was it that struck?

*Тепѣрь два часа.* It is now two o'clock.

*Сейчасъ шесть часо́въ.* It is now six o'clock.

*Сейчасъ не больше семи часо́въ.*

It is not more than seven o'clock.

*Сейчасъ одна мину́та пятаго.*

It is one minute past four.

*Сейчасъ четверть пятаго.* It is a quarter past four.

*Сейчасъ половина пятаго.* It is half past four.

*Сейчасъ тридцать девять третьяго.*

It is 39 minutes past two.

*Сейчасъ три четверти третьяго.*

It is a quarter to three.

---

\* *дву* Old Russian for *двухъ*.

Сейчасъ безъ четверти девять.

It is a quarter to nine.

Сейчасъ половина одиннадцатаго.

It is half past ten.

Сейчасъ безъ десяти (мину́тъ) двѣнадцать.

It is ten minutes to twelve.

Онъ уѣхалъ въ сорокъ девяти послѣ четырёхъ.

He went away at 4.49.

#### V. *Fractions.*

There is little to add under this head, but the student must specially note the compounds with полъ, полу, a half. полъ as a regular noun signifies sex or half.\*

e.g. мужской полъ the male sex  
пополамъ by halves

(1) When the compound signifies half of a whole, the nominative has пол- with the substantive in the genitive; the other cases are declined regularly with the prefix полу-.

e.g. полчаса́ half an hour, полу́часа, полу́часу, etc.  
полверсты́ half a verst, полуверсты́, полуверстѣ́

Thus, too, полдень́ mid-day, полночь́ midnight;  
полу́дни, полу́ночи, etc.

After the preposition по, the locative of полдень́ is полу́дни (a relic of the time when день́ was a feminine like кость); e.g. нѣсколько мину́тъ по полу́дни a few minutes after noon.

Thus, too, потоло́к [v. § 62, IV. (8)].

---

\* Distinguish полъ floor, and пола́ skirt.

It is most important to distinguish *полднѣ*, *полно́чи*, half a day, half a night, which signify duration, not a point of time.

In these words *only* the first element is declined, the second already being in the genitive.

e.g. Я бодрствовалъ *полднѣ*, *полно́чи*, *полчасá*, etc.

I sat up half a day, half a night, half an hour, etc.

In older Russian, as in German, there were other compounds with *полу-*, for  $2\frac{1}{2}$ ,  $3\frac{1}{2}$ , etc., viz. *полтретьяго*,  $2\frac{1}{2}$ , etc.

These are obsolete. Modern Russian, like English, says *два съ полови́ной*, etc. [v. § 62, IV. (8).]

e.g. Послѣ *полуминуты́* этой рабóты она́ устала.

After half a minute of this work she was tired.

In this connection the word *сутки*, *су́токъ*, may be noticed, meaning the whole day, i.e. 24 hours, including *день* day and *ночь* night.

(2) Where “half” is used loosely, and not in terms of strict measurement.

These are compounds prefixed with *полу-* invariable.

e.g. <i>полуостровъ</i>	a peninsula
<i>полумѣсяцъ</i>	a crescent moon
<i>полутómъ</i>	a half-volume
( <i>but</i> <i>полто́ма</i> , <i>полутóма</i>	half of a volume)
<i>полу-офиціальный</i>	semi-official, etc.



VI. *Russian money.*

The unit is the рубль (рублѣ) or цѣлѣковый, worth about two shillings. [v. § 4 (9).]

The divisions are as follows :—

90	сорокъ	девяно́сто копе́екъ	огъ	де́вять	грѣвнѣ
80	„	во́семьдесятъ	„	„	во́семь „
70	„	се́мьдесятъ	„	„	се́мь „
60	„	ше́стьдесятъ	„	„	ше́сть „
50	„	пя́тьдесятъ	„	„	полти́на огъ полти́нникъ
40	„	соро́къ	„	„	че́тыре грѣвенника
30	„	три́дцать	„	„	три „
25	„	два́дцать пять	„	„	че́тверта́къ
20	„	два́дцать	„	„	двугрѣвенный
15	„	пяти́надцать	„	„	пяти́-алты́нный
10	„	де́сять	„	„	грѣвенникъ
5	„	пять	„	„	пята́чѣкъ
3	„	три копе́йки	„	„	алты́нъ*
2	„	два́ „	„	„	грошъ
1	„	копе́йка			
$\frac{1}{2}$	„	полкопе́йка	„	„	де́нежка
$\frac{1}{4}$	„	че́тверть копе́йки	„	„	полу́шка

VII. *Frequencies.*

Besides *одна́жды*, etc., there are some other locutions that should be noticed.

(1) In the multiplication table *еди́ножды* is used instead of *одна́жды*, and *че́тырежды* is retained for this purpose. From five onwards the instrumental of the numeral is used, but is accented *пѣтью*, *ше́стью*, *во́семью*, *де́вятью*, *оди́ннадцатю*, etc., and *not* on the ultimate, as usual.

---

\* Obsolete.

(2) Before comparatives the forms used are **двое**, **второе**, **четверо**, **пятеро** . . . **въ десятеро** ; and thenceforward **въ одиннадцать разъ**, etc.

e.g. **Москва по пространству въ двадцать семь разъ больше Серпухова.**

Moscow in extent is twenty-one times bigger than Sérpukhov.

VIII. A note should be added that one cardinal has become obsolete, namely **тыма** or **тма** 10,000 (except in some phrases, and as an expression for a multitude). There is a derivative, **тёмникъ** a commander of 10,000, and **тматмущій**, "multitudinous."

#### IX. *Cards.*

The names of the suits and the cards (**карты**, feminine) may be useful to the student.

The four suits (**масть**, feminine, third declension) are : hearts **черви** (**червѣй**, feminine, third declension); diamonds **бубны** (**бубонъ**, feminine); spades **пики** (**пикъ**, feminine), and **трефы** (**трефъ**, feminine) clubs. Trumps are **козырь** (**масъ**); a game without trumps **игра въ безкозыряхъ**. A trick is **взятка**, **взяточка** ; **игрокъ** the player.

The cards in each suit are :—

тузъ ace	шестёрка six	валётъ knave
двойка deuce	семёрка seven	дама queen
тройка three	осьмёрка eight	король king
четвёрка four	девятка nine	
пятёрка five	десятка ten	

e.g. **король червѣй ; пятёрка бубенъ ; тройка пикъ ; девятка трефъ.**

Notice the phrases : **играть**, **сыграть** (perfective) **въ карты** ; **проиграть** to lose ; **выиграть** to win (imperfectives **проигрывать**, **выигрывать**).

## § 82. THE PRONOUNS.

I. *The Interrogative Pronouns.*

These are used as in English, *кто* referring to persons, like "who"; *что* to inanimate objects and neuters like "what," and *который* corresponding to "which."

*Note*, however, that in English the genitive precedes the noun by which it is governed; in Russian it follows. [v. § 69, IV. (3).]

e.g. John's house. *Домъ Ивана.*

Thus: *Въ домъ котораго мужика ты вошёлъ?*

Into which peasant's house did you go?

II. *The Relative Pronouns.*

As in English, the interrogative and relative are now identical in form.

*кто* is used when the subject is a person, or in correlative and indefinite sentences, answering to *тотъ*, *всякій*, *всѣ*.

e.g. *Тому, кто лжётъ, не вѣрятъ.*

A liar is not believed.

*Всѣ, кто прибыли, изумились.*

All who arrived were astounded.

*что* is similarly used, when the generality is not personal.

e.g. *Всё что ты сказалъ—дурачество.*

All you have said is folly.

Otherwise, for nouns *ко́торый* is used ; and, as always in Russian, the genitive follows and never precedes.

e.g. Опáсности, ко́торымъ я подвергáлся.

The dangers I have risked.

До́мъ, крýша ко́торо́го снесена́ вѣ́тромъ.

The house the roof of which has been carried off by the wind.

како́й may be substituted, where the sense allows ; it means "such as."

*Observe.*—The relative is *never* omitted as in English. But in common parlance *что* in the nominative tends to replace *кто* and *ко́торый* for all numbers and genders. This is not an admitted literary use.

e.g. Э́то то́тъ са́мый ни́щій, что́ приходи́лъ къ вамъ у́тромъ.

This is the same beggar as visited you in the morning.

### III. *The Indefinite Pronouns.*

These are of two kinds ; first, *кто* and *что*, etc., unaccented (cf. in Greek *τις, τι*, contrasted with *τίς, τί*), and next, compounded pronouns with *то, ни*, and other particles. [v. § 85 on negative sentences.]

e.g. Всѣ́ что́ ни́ есть.\*

Anything whatsoever.

Ско́лько ни́ раба́тали.

However much they worked.

---

\* *ни* as compared with *не* is like the Latin *nē*, Greek *μή*, e.g. *πᾶν ὃ, τι ἂν ᾖ* or *μή τι* whatever it may [not] be.

Кѣмъ бы ты ни родился, ты всётаки обязанъ повиноваться закону.

Whatever you were born, you must obey the law.

Кто-нибудь.

Whoever it may be.

Кто-нибудь пусть принесётъ мнѣ стаканъ воды.

Let somebody bring me a glass of water.

(будь imperative of быть; v. § 57, II. and 41, VI.)

The distinction between *какой-то*... and *какой ни* is almost identical with the English "some" and "any": someone (but I don't know who exactly); anyone (and there is no discrimination nor knowledge of any individual).

#### IV. *The Reciprocal Pronouns.*

To express "each other," "one another," there are two phrases: *другъ друга*, *одинъ другой*. *другъ друга* is used for *all* genders and numbers. The latter part of the phrase is varied, to be in agreement with the verb or sentence.

e.g. Они ненавидѣли другъ друга.

They hated each other.

Онѣ спорили другъ съ другомъ.

They quarrelled with each other.

*другъ дружку* (from *дружка*, feminine) is popularly also in use.

But with regard to *things*, the usual phrase is *одинъ другой*, both of which are declined in full.

e.g. *Волны сходились и разбѣгались борясь одна съ другой.*

The waves met and parted, fighting one another.

V. *The Negative Pronouns* [v. § 85 and § 41, VII.].

In Russian, negatives are doubled, but do not cancel each other.\* There is no means of expressing in Russian "I did *not* see nobody."

e.g. *Никакой не было причины къ его уходу.*

There was no reason.

All negative pronouns are resolved when governed by a preposition. [v. § 41, VII.]

e.g. *Ни къ какому изъ вышеуказанныхъ примѣровъ это не подходитъ.*

This does not comply with any of the previous examples.

The only apparent exception is when the second negative negates a different verb or a noun or adjective.

e.g. *Я не считаю его неучтивымъ.*

I do not consider him impolite.

*Никто не можетъ не узнать его милосердія.*

No one can not-recognise (fail to recognise) his clemency.

---

\* E.g. in Greek *οὐδὲς οὐκ ἐφίκει* no one has come, but *οὐκ ἔπαθεν οὐδὲν* could mean, as in English, "he did not experience nothing, but..."

## § 83. THE RUSSIAN APPELLATIVES.

Under this head a few notes will be found, as to the Russian methods of speaking to others, writing to others, and addressing letters.

I. *Conversation.*

Intimate friends and relatives use the pronoun ты ; the politer form is вы. The Russian for "tutoyer," "dutzen," is тыкать.

вы takes a predicative adjective in the plural.

e.g. вы очень любезны you are very kind (*unlike* the French "vous êtes très aimable")

But a noun following is in the singular, as in French, e.g. вы мой лучший другъ you are my best friend.

Servants when speaking of their masters use the 3rd person plural.

e.g. Дома-ли ба́ринъ (или ба́рышня)? *here*

Is your master (mistress) at home?

Онѣ ушли́.

He (she) has gone out.

Russians in addressing one another use not the family name, but the Christian name and patronymic.

Russians have three names: the Christian name, the patronymic, i.e. the father's name, and the family name.

e.g. Ле́въ Никола́евичъ Толсто́й.

The "patronymic" ends in -овичъ (-евичъ) or -овъ (-евъ) (for the lower classes) in the masculine,\* and -овна (-евна) and -ова (-ева) in the feminine.

The Christian name is called *имя*, the patronymic *отчество*, the family name *фамілія*.

e.g. Какъ зовѹтъ васъ по имени, отчеству, фаміліи?  
 Какъ ваше имя, (ваше) отчество, (ваша)  
 фамілія?

In ordinary narration and conversation all classes are designated by the name and patronymic.

e.g. При Николаѣ Александровичѣ.

In the reign of Nicholas II.

Вчера я встрѣтилъ Марью Алексѣвну.

Equivalent to "yesterday I met Mary," or  
 "yesterday I met Mrs. or Miss . . ."

The Russian equivalents for Mr., Mrs., Monsieur, Madame, are *господи́нъ* (plural *господа́*), and *госпожа́*. The use of them is very much more restricted than in other European languages.

*Господи́нъ*, *госпожа́*, are only employed when the relationship is distant. Thus, the master of a factory would address his equal (whose name we will suppose to be *Васи́лій Па́вловичъ Перепо́лкинъ*) as *Васи́лій*

---

\* The patronymic is accented like the name from which it is derived; where monosyllabic names throw the accent on to terminations, or the termination can be accented, the accent is similarly thrown forward in the derivative. E.g. *Ома́*, *Оми́чъ*; *Кузьма́*, *Кузьми́чъ*; *Са́ва*, *Са́вичъ*; *Пе́тръ* (*Петра́*), *Петро́вичъ*; *Алекса́ндръ* (*Алекса́ндра*), *Алекса́ндровичъ*. A few feminines are formed in -ична, e.g. *Оми́ниш(ч)на*, *Са́виш(ч)на*, *Кузьми́ниш(ч)на*; *Лука́*, *Луки́ниш(ч)на*; *Никита́*, *Никити́ш(ч)на*.



Павловичъ; an underling (such as a clerk) as Господи́нъ Перепёлкинъ; a mere workman or lower servant as Васи́лий. He would not address him as Перепёлкинъ, unless he were a superior giving a direct command to an inferior; e.g. the master speaking to a foreman.

Again, if a doctor is introduced, he will commonly be addressed as до́кторъ (as we say "colonel" or "lieutenant" or "doctor"), unless he is of higher standing, when the polite form would be господа́иъ до́кторъ.

When comparative strangers address one another, they will say господа́иъ Ба́шкинъ; as they approach intimacy, they will use the form Илья́ Кузьми́чъ; and as close friends, Илья́; but seldom Ба́шкинъ, as in other languages, the surname.

## II. *Between masters and servants.*

The servant speaks of his master and mistress, and their daughter, respectively as ба́ринъ, ба́рыня, ба́рышня.

In shops, restaurants, etc., an attendant calls the customers or masters су́дарь, су́да́рыня (an abbreviation of госуда́рь, госуда́рыня), or adds an enclitic съ; these phrases are equivalent to the English "sir" and "madam."

e.g. Слу́шаю-съ. I hear you, sir.

Да-съ. Yes, sir.

Что прика́жете-съ? What are your orders, sir?

This съ is supposed to be an abbreviation of су́дарь.

The master and mistress (*patron* and *patronne*) of a business house are хозя́и́нъ, хозя́ева.

III. At meetings the company is collectively addressed as *Милостивыя государыни и милостивые\** *государи*, or more simply as *господа*, equivalent to "Ladies and Gentlemen."

#### IV. *Titles.*

Majesty is *Величество*. The monarch is called *государь* (*государыня*), and these words are written with a capital, unless the reference is historical to a deceased monarch.

e.g. *Его Императорское Величество Государь.*

*Ея Императрица Величество Государыня.*

*Царь, царица*, are used in ordinary speech.

The Royal family has the title *Высочество*.

e.g. *Его Императорское Высочество Наследникъ.*

*Цесаревичъ Алексѣй Николаевичъ.*

His Imperial Highness the heir *Tsesarévich Alexis.*

Otherwise the forms are *царевичъ, царица*.

Grand Dukes (who belong to the Royal Family more distantly) are styled *Великій Князь*.

e.g. *Его Императорское Высочество Великій Князь Николай Николаевичъ.*

*Ея Императорское Высочество Великая Княгиня Елизавета Николаевна.*

The daughters of a *князь* are styled *княжна*.

---

\* A rendering of the German "gnädige Herrschaften."

Dukes (князь) have the title сіятельство (brilliance).

e.g. Его Сіятельство Князь Пáвель Петро́вич Долго-  
ру́кій.

Earls and barons are also styled сіятельство.

e.g. Его Сіятельство Графъ (графі́ня) . . .

The civil ranks are as follows:—

Его́ Высокoпревосході́тельство (excellency), for a  
Дѣ́йстви́тельный Тайный Совѣ́тникъ (something  
like a Privy Councillor; also called Стáтскій  
Генерáлъ).

Его́ Превосході́тельство, for a Тайный Совѣ́тникъ.

Его́ Высокорóдіе, for a Статскій Совѣ́тникъ.

Его́ Высокоблагорóдіе, for a Коллѣ́жскій Секретáрь,  
and for the lower ranks.

Его́ Благорóдіе.

In the army, ranks from a порúчикъ (lieutenant) to  
a штабъ-капитáнъ (captain) are styled Его́ Благорóдіе;  
from a капитáнъ to полкóвникъ, Его́ Высо́ко-благорóдіе;  
from a general of infantry to a general-lieutenant,  
Его́ Превосході́тельство.

In the Church, the regular clergy are styled Высо́ко-  
преподóбіе, преподóбіе, высо́копреосвященство, преосвя-  
щенство, according to rank; the lower orders being  
called благословéніе.

Persons not titled are addressed господи́нъ, госпожа́,  
followed by the full name; often the господи́нъ,  
госпожа́, is omitted on envelopes.

As stated in § 67, Russian concord follows sense and not form, unlike French and German.

e.g. Его Превосходительство изволили прибыть.

His Excellency has arrived (deigned to arrive)

Ея Императорское Величество Государыня  
говорила что . . .

Her Imperial Majesty the Empress said . . .

*Contrast*—"Sa Majesté le roi est arrivée." "Que désire-t-elle?" In Russian, что хотите.

These titles must be used in combination with the name of the office.

e.g. Его Высокопревосходительству Господину  
Министру Народнаго Просвѣщенія (Путей  
сообщеній).

To his Excellency the Minister of Public  
Education (communications).

In a private letter—

Его Высокопревосходительству Аркадію Михай-  
ловичу Разину.

To his Excellency Arkádi Mikhailovič Rázin.

V. In addressing letters the full titles are inserted, in the dative, with or without къ.

e.g. In a private letter, Его Превосходительству  
(or Высокопревосходительству) Николаю  
Семёновичу Пугачёву.

If official, Его Высокопревосходительству  
Господину Начальнику Либáво-Рóменской  
желѣзной доро́ги, Николаю Семёновичу  
Пугачёву.

To his Excellency the director of the Libáva-  
Romeny railway. . . .

Where there is no title, any of these three forms are applicable:—

Его Высокородію Николаю Петровичу господину Пивоварову.

Николаю Петровичу Пивоварову.

Or simply, Николаю Петровичу господину Пивоварову.

Next follows the name of the street and number, then the house, lastly the town and country.

e.g. Его Сіятельству Князю Семёну Аркадіевичу Долгорукому,

Мѣховая улица, No. 18.

Домъ Башкина,

въ Москвѣ.

Letters addressed abroad are marked: за границю, beyond the frontier.

The letter is usually headed with some honorific adjective.

e.g. When very formal, Милостивая Государыня, Госпожа Шáхматова; when less stiff, Милостивая Мáрья Ефíмовна; if friendly, Многоуважаемая Мáрья Ефíмовна; if intimate, Дорогая or Любэзная Мáрья Ефíмовна.

Thus the English equivalent of Многоуважаемая Мáрья Ефíмовна, would in this case be "Dear Mrs. or Miss Šákhmatov."

The conclusion of the letter would be as follows:—

Съ совершеннымъ почтёніемъ.

Готóвый къ услугамъ.

(or, informally) Вашъ

Васíлій Пивоваровъ.

## § 84. INTERROGATIVE SENTENCES.

As in English, sentences beginning with interrogative pronouns and adverbs are interrogative in themselves.

e.g. *Когда прибѣдете?*

When will you arrive?

Other interrogative sentences are distinguished by the enclitic particle *ли*, which is appended to the emphatic word of the sentence. The personal pronoun, or subject, may or may not follow the verb.

e.g. *Не сможете-ли вы завтра приготовить мои сапоги?*  
Will you not be able to get my boots ready to-morrow?

*Скоро-ли прибѣдемъ къ берегу?*  
Shall we soon reach shore?

There is another interrogative adverb, *развѣ*, which conveys an ironic sense.

e.g. *Развѣ нужно чтобы насъ подслушивали?*  
Is it necessary they should overhear us?

## § 85. NEGATIVE SENTENCES.

Russian has two particles of negation, *не* and *ни*. A third one, *нѣтъ*, is considered to be an abbreviation of *не есть*, and is used for "No" as a reply.

*ни* is used:—

(1) To express neither—nor—.

e.g. *Ни я ни мой отецъ не могли скрыть такую тревогу.*  
Neither I nor my father could conceal such a trouble.

*ни ни* always requires the verb negated with *не*.

(2) In composition with negative pronouns [v. § 40 (1), § 41, VII. and § 82, V.]. Such pronouns, e.g. *никако́й*, also need a verb negatived with *не*.

(3) With the indefinite pronouns [v. § 82, III.].

*не* is used:—

(1) To express the negation of a verb in all tenses and moods.

e.g. *Не трога́й меня́, когда́ я шью.*

Do not touch me, when I am sewing.

(2) With adjectives to negative their meaning. Notice in this connection that Russian possesses no such distinction of negatives as English or Latin; e.g. between non-essential, unessential, illogical, non-logical, insensate, nonsensical (the distinction generally being that an adjective negatived with “un-” or “in-” implies the absence of the positive qualities; whereas the non-compound excludes the compatibility of that quality with some other object).

Such a distinction must be otherwise expressed.

e.g. Your statement is unreasonable.

*Твоё объясне́ние неразу́мно.*

Caterpillars are irrational, non-rational beings.

*Гусеницы́—это безразу́мныя существа́.*

Неопредѣ́лennыя зада́чи indefinite, undefined tasks.

Безпредѣ́льныя простран́ства infinite—endless—horizons.

*Observe* (as stated in § 41, VII.) that in Russian a double negative asseverates, and does not annul as in English.

e.g. *Я не встрѣча́лъ никогó* I met no one.

An apparent exception exists, when the negatives belong to separate verbs or as stated above.

e.g. Это было встрѣчено, какъ нѣчто такое, что должно было случиться, что не могло не случиться.

This was faced as something that must have come about, that could not not have come about (have failed of coming about).

(3) не, in combination with certain pronouns, forms negative pronouns.\*

The pronouns are кто, что, когда, куда, etc. (i.e. those on the first line § 40 (2)).

In this usage не stands for нѣтъ there is not.

e.g. Нечего дѣлать.

There is nothing to do.

(but Я не дѣлалъ ничего.

I was doing nothing.)

Мнѣ не къ кому обратиться.

I have no one to turn to.

Ему не на чёмъ основывать его надежды.

He has nothing on which to build up hopes.

*The preposition is always inserted between the negative and the pronoun, as with никто, etc.*

Observe, in the past or future tense the verb "to be" must be inserted.

e.g. Не чего будетъ (было) дѣлать.

Lastly, the reader is cautioned to distinguish between this use of не, as a separable negative, and нѣ the indefinite prefix; e.g. нѣкто somebody, нѣкоторые, etc. [v. § 40 (2).]

---

\* This use of не, formerly нѣ, is probably derived from не е there is not; е in older Slavonic being an unaccented form of есть.



## § 86. THE VERB "TO BE."

In the present tense the verb "to be" is generally omitted. In any case the forms *есмь, еси, есмы, есте*, are obsolete, and *суть* is only rarely found; *есть*, when necessary, replacing all the persons and numbers.

e.g. *Я здоровъ* I am well.

*Ты негодѣй* you are a scapegrace.

*Онѣ воры* they are thieves.

*Бáрина нѣтъ дома* master is not at home.

However, the "copula" in the present sometimes must be stated.

(1) *Есть* regularly stands for "there is," "there are."

e.g. *Есть на свѣтѣ худыя люди.*

There are evil people in the world.

The negative of *есть* in this sense is *нѣтъ*. [v. § 85.]

(2) *Есть* and *суть* sometimes are used to assert existence.

e.g. *Богъ есть: ангелы суть.*

God *is*: the angels *are*.

But it is better to use the verb *существовать*.

e.g. *Всегда существують нѣсколько исключеній для всякаго правила граммáтики.*

There are always some exceptions to every rule of grammar.

## (3) In definitions.

e.g. Прямая линия есть кратчайшее расстояние между двумя точками.

A straight line is the shortest distance between two points.

Болезни суть наказание человеку за первородный грѣхъ.

Diseases are man's punishment for primeval sin.

But, in all such cases it is better to substitute the pronoun это.

e.g. Линия — это...

Болезни — это наказание...

## (4) When the use of the copula is essential to clarity быть is generally replaced by some exacter verb, such as сидѣть, находиться, лежать, стоять, состоять.

e.g. Мой дѣдя находится въ плохомъ состояніи здоровія.

My uncle is in poor health.

Москва стоитъ на рѣкѣ того же названія.

Moscow lies (is) on a river of the same name.

Прага стоитъ на холмѣ надъ рѣкою Влтавою.\*

Prague is on a hill above the Moldau.

Котка сидитъ на стулѣ.

The cat is on the chair.

Собака лежитъ подъ столѣмъ.

The dog is under the table.

Стулъ стоитъ въ дѣтской.

The chair is in the nursery.

Онъ состоитъ офицеромъ въ арміи.

He is an officer on service.

The omission in Russian of the present of быть explains the form of the past tense. In older Russian the perfect ran я есмь (на)писалъ, -а, -о, ты еси (на)писалъ, -а, -о, etc.; later the copula vanished. Cf. in Polish pisałem, pisałam, pisałom ; pisałeś, pisałaś, pisałós, etc.; pisałismy, pisałysmy, etc.

---

\* Or Молдавію.

*In every other tense and mood the verb быть is used, but the predicate put into the dative or instrumental, according to sense.*

e.g. Онъ былъ банкиромъ (present онъ банкиръ)  
а теперъ онъ торговецъ селёдками.

He was a banker and is now selling herrings.

Нашествіе Татаръ было несчастьемъ для Руси.

The incursion of the Tatars was a misfortune  
to Russia.

Когда бываёте (бўдете) дома?

When are you at home as a rule?

When will you be at home?

It should, however, be observed that in the present the word **вотъ** is used like the French *voici*, *voilà*, or the Italian *ecco*.

e.g. Вотъ вашъ братъ который опоздалъ.

There is your brother who was late.

### § 87. THE VERB "TO HAVE."

In Russian there is no verb which can be exactly translated "to have."

The verb "to have" is replaced by **у меня есть**, **былъ**, etc.

e.g. У меня [есть] (было от были) три грамматик  
русскаго языка.

I have (had) three grammars of the Russian  
language,

**имѣть** "to possess" or "own" is also used in this sense.

e.g. **Съ кѣмъ имѣю честь говорить?**

With whom have I the honour of speaking?

Otherwise, **имѣть** means "to own"; cf. **имущество** property.

e.g. **У меня есть собственный домъ.**

I have a house of my own.

But **Имѣю собственный домъ.**

I have (i.e. own as my property) a house  
belonging to me.

### § 88. SPECIAL USES OF THE INFINITIVE.

The infinitive has a special idiomatic use as a sort of general fatalistic future; the construction is impersonal, the logical subject and the predicate both being put in the dative.

e.g. **Имъ не забыть своихъ дѣтей.**

They shall not forget their children.

**Такимъ образомъ никому не быть богатымъ.**

In this fashion no one gets rich. [v. § 34 (1).]

**Ну, хорошо что ты ко мнѣ зашёлъ; а то не  
быва́ть тебѣ живому.**

It is well for you you came to me; otherwise  
you would not be alive.

*Observe* the dative adjective may be in the simple or attributive form; the instrumental is also allowable; thus in the instance above, **такимъ образомъ . . . богатымъ.**

The infinitive *may* be used as a noun, as in English.

e.g. **То fly on an aeroplane is a great pleasure.**

**Летѣть на аэропланъ—это большое удовольствіе.\***

---

\* *Observe* aviator is **лѣтчикъ**.

But the verbal noun in *-nie* is generally substituted in the nominative, and always in the oblique cases.

e.g. To suffer is our truest experience.

Страда́нiе — наше са́мое iстинное испытáнiе.

By trying you will succeed.

Стара́нiемъ тебѣ уда́тся.

## § 89. THE USE OF GERUNDIVES AND PARTICIPLES.

### I. *The Gerundives.*

The two gerundives, present and past, can only refer to the subject\* of the sentence, and are used as indeclinable participles.

e.g. Бродя́ по у́лицѣ, я встрѣтилъ Ива́на Я́ков-  
леви́ча.

Whilst wandering along the street I met  
Iván Yákovleviç.

Чита́я А́нну Каре́нину, я пла́кала.

On reading Ánne Karénina, I cried.

Заплати́въ свои́ долги́, я почув́ствовала себя́  
свободною́.

Having paid my debts I felt free.

### II. *The participles, present and past.*

These are used in agreement with a noun.

e.g. Въ ко́мнатѣ́ было́ ти́хо, то́лько шелестѣ́ли  
перевора́чиваемы́я листьы́.

It was quiet in the room, only the leaves (of  
the book) rustled as they were turned over  
(present participle passive).

---

\* The historical explanation of this rule is that the "gerundives" are the shorter (predicative) form of the nom. sing. masculine of the active participles.

Передъ его расширенными глазами проходили  
страшные образы, вызывавшіе жалость . . .

Before his *open* eyes terrifying images passed,  
*provoking* pity . . .

Въ темную ночь они летѣли куда-то на своихъ  
колючихъ крыльяхъ.

In the dark of night they flew somewhere on  
their *sharp-pointed* wings.

Всѣ это было проявленія одной загадочной  
силы, желающей погубить человѣка.

All of these were aspects of some one  
mysterious power *that wants* to ruin man-  
kind.

Я видѣлъ её сидящей на стулѣ.

I saw her *sitting* in a chair.

Онъ походилъ на человѣка теряющаго послѣд-  
нюю надежду и оставившаго всё въ прош-  
ломъ.

He resembled a man *who was losing* his last  
hope, and *had left* everything behind in the  
past.

Каждый годъ русская желѣзнодорожная  
промышленность уменьшаетъ количество  
ввозимыхъ изъ Германіи товаровъ.

Every year the Russian iron industry  
diminishes the quantity of goods imported  
from Germany.

It should also be observed that the present participle  
passive, especially when compounded with *не*, has a  
secondary meaning, corresponding to the Latin *-bilis*.

e.g. **видимый** visible, **движимый** moveable  
**сгораемый** incendiable, **нелюбимый** unlovable

Abstracts from these are formed in **-ость**, etc.

**неотъемлемость** imprescriptibility  
**неотмѣняемость** irrevocability

The past participle passive *may* also bear this same secondary meaning, e.g. **несравненный** incomparable.

As a general rule these gerundives and participles are used much like the English forms in “-ing.”

## § 90. SUBORDINATE CLAUSES.

### I. *Temporal.*

There being no moods in the Russian verb, temporal conjunctions merely govern the same forms as are used in principal clauses.

There are some few independent forms, such as **когда́** when, **пока́** until; most of the conjunctions are compounds with **что**; cf. in French *quand*, but *quoique*, *bienque*, *lorsque*, etc., all formed with *que*.

**когда́** means “when” generally; **пока́** is followed by “**не**,” as in French.

e.g. **Пока́ Но́виковъ не уѣзжа́тъ изъ Москвѣ́.**

Until Nóvikov left Moscow, “jusqu’à ce que Novikov ne quittât Moscou.”

But temporal conjunctions are mostly formed with the appropriate preposition governing a case of **то́тъ**, **то**,

followed by *какъ* or *что*; e.g. *между тѣмъ какъ* while, *въ томъ что* exactly when, *по томъ что*, *послѣ того какъ* after, *до того какъ* until, *отъ того что* after which . . .

## II. *Causal conjunctions, etc.*

These are all formed prepositionally; e.g. *потому что* because, *для того чтобы* with the object of, *кромѣ того что* besides which, *послѣ того какъ* after (causal), *противъ того, что* against the fact that . . ., etc., very much like the German "wogegen," "indem," "nachdem," etc.

## III. *Conditional clauses.*

The clause prefaced by "if" is called the protasis, the principal sentence is called the apodosis.

The regular method is to prefix the protasis with *если*, in common parlance *коли*.

When the past tense are used the particle *бы\** may be added to the protasis, and must be added to the apodosis. *бы* is enclitic and can be abbreviated to *бъ*, e.g. *еслибъ*.

The apodosis is also frequently prefaced by the particle *то*, which stands first in the sentence, like the German "wenn . . ." "so." This *то*, like *so*, is left untranslated in English.

---

\* *БЫ* in modern Russian is a particle creating the sense of a conditional tense ("I would have," "should be," etc.). It is originally the 2nd and 3rd person sing. preterite of *быть* (formerly *я быхъ, ты, ояъ бы*). In Old Russian the compound tense *быхъ быхъ* was a regular conditional like *j'aurais été, j'eusse été*.



The tense sequence is as in English.

e.g. Если васъ посѣщу́, то приведу́ мою сѣстру.  
If I visit you, I will bring my sister.

Если-бъ случилась такая бѣда́, то я увѣдомилъ-  
бы васъ объ этомъ.

If such a misfortune happened to me, I would  
acquaint you of it.

When the events stated in protasis and apodosis are both unreal, бы is repeated in both.

e.g. Если-бъ я простудился, я не могъ бы окончить  
свою книгу.

If I had caught cold, I should not have been  
able to finish my book.

The infinitive may be used in either clause as stated in § 88.

e.g. Если бы мнѣ знать.  
If I had known.

Если идти направо.

If we are to go to the right, . . . .

The protasis may be *irregularly* introduced :—

(1) By two disjointed verbs.

e.g. Разбогачью, заплачу́; не разбогачью, не заплачу́.  
If I grow rich, I will pay; if I don't, I shan't.

(2) By the imperative uninflected for any person  
[v. § 91].

e.g. Знай я это раньше, я бы не написалъ.

Had I known this sooner, I would not have  
written.

## (3) By the infinitive [cf. § 88].

e.g. Знать бы мнѣ это раньше, я бы не осмѣлился говорить.

Had I known this sooner, I would not have dared speak.

*In all these cases бы marks unreality, an unfulfilled condition. Cf. § 93 on было.*

## IV. Final clauses.

Final clauses relate either to purpose or effect.

## (1) Purpose.

Where the subjects of the principal and the subordinate clause are the same, чтобы (sometimes дабы) is used with the infinitive.

e.g. Я путешествовалъ по Россіи чтобы учиться русскому языку.

I travelled about in Russia to learn Russian.  
[v. § 69, V.]

Where the subjects are different, чтобы (or дабы) generally with the past tense.

e.g. Я уѣду изъ Москвы чтобы ты осталась одна.

I will leave Moscow that you may be left alone.

## (2) Effect—"so that," такъ что, with the present, past or future.

e.g. Орёлъ летѣлъ такъ быстро что нельзя было попастьъ въ него.

The eagle flew so fast that there was no chance of hitting him.

Она такъ раздражительна, что я не выдержу.

She is so irritable that I shall not stand it.

V. *Reported Speech.*

In English reported speech goes into the tense of the principal verb, with the necessary change of person.

e.g. "He said that he was going to visit his cousin if time permitted." The remark in direct narration would be "I am going to visit my cousin, if time permits."

The same rule does not altogether apply to Russian. Russian has only one past tense, so that there is no difference corresponding to "I *have* seen," "I said I *had* seen." Further, there is no reported future tense, "was going to visit," "would visit." Consequently the above sentence in Russian would run: "Онъ сказа́лъ что посѣтитъ своего двоюроднаго брата если у него́ бу́детъ время" (present tense in reported speech).

Or again, "He said he had seen the Tsar." His remark was "I have seen the Tsar"; however, in Russian, "I saw," "have seen," and "had seen" are all alike, уви́дѣлъ. Consequently the Russian would be: "Онъ сказа́лъ что уви́дѣлъ Царя́."

Lastly, in reporting the present tense, Russian, like English, sometimes may change to the past.

e.g. He said he was writing a letter to his mother  
(I am writing . . .).

Онъ сказа́лъ что писа́лъ письмо́ къ ма́тери, or  
*better* что пи́шетъ.

Consequently, in reporting an action with a verb in the past, Russian does not, because it cannot, change the tense.

In reporting a speech with a future tense Russian must use the future, as it has no indirect form of expressing the future.

In reporting a speech with a verb in the present, Russian can retain the present, changing the person, or may use the past tense.

In reporting an imperative, the imperative must be treated like a future.

e.g. They said they would murder Cæsar (i.e. Let us murder Cæsar).

Онѣ сказа́ли что убу́ють Цѣзаря (сказа́ли, да убу́емъ or убу́емте Цѣзаря).

In reporting a question, the same changes of person and tense must be used, but the particle **ли** is affixed to the first word of the subordinate clause, unless some other interrogative word be there instead. [v. § 84.]

e.g. He asked Peter would his (Peter's) sister be going out as a nurse.

He asked Peter when his sister had lost her money.

He asked Peter whether his sister was ailing.

In direct speech—

Will your sister be going out as a nurse?

When did your sister lose her money?

Is your sister ailing?

In Russian—

Онѣ спроси́лъ Петра́, пойдѣтъ-ли его́ сестра́ въ няньки. [v. § 69, III.]

Онѣ спроси́лъ Петра́, когда́ его́ сестра́ потеря́ла ея́ де́ньги.

Онѣ спроси́лъ Петра́, не больна́-ли его́ сестра́.

In all these cases the only change is in the person, none in the tense.

Similarly—

He said "could one believe a German."

Онъ сказа́лъ, "ра́звѣ мо́жно вѣ́рить Нѣмцу."

These are the usual methods of reporting speech in Russian. A few idiomatic usages must still be discussed. Three particles, *де*, *могъ* and *дѣска́тъ* (or *дѣска́тъ*), and in vulgar Russian, *грю*, *гря́шь*, *гря́ть*, *гря́ли* (abbreviations of *говорю́*), are used like the vulgar English, "'e sez," to indicate a reported speech; *де*, *могъ*, *дѣска́тъ* are all three abbreviations of words bearing the same meaning, "he said"; \* and are all popular in style.

These particles are used in reporting messages (where in Latin and Greek the accusative and infinitive would be employed).

e.g. Онъ говори́тъ: я мо́гъ иска́лъ, да зна́ть мо́гъ нѣ́тъ.

He says, "I looked, but could not find out."

Объ ита́льинской а́рміи отзы́вался съ презри́тельной улы́бкой, какъ о вели́чинѣ́ да́же серьё́знаго внима́нія не заслу́живающей; мы-де еѣ хоро́шо зна́емъ. [v. § 4 (7).]

He disparaged the Italian army with a contemptuous smile, as though speaking of a power not deserving serious attention; "we know all about it."

Вы ду́мали запуга́ть меня́, Васи́лій Ива́новичъ; во́тъ дѣска́тъ, я егó пугну́.

You thought you would frighten me, Vasili Ivánovič; you thought, "I will frighten him."

---

\* These examples are partly taken from Boyer's *Manuel de la langue russe*.

In every case where these particles are used, the quotation or indirect narration is in the person and tense of the original; these words merely serve as spoken inverted commas.

### § 91. THE IMPERATIVE.

The imperative conjugated in full comprises the following forms:—

e.g. да играю	пусть играю	let me play
играй		play
да играеть	пусть играеть	let him play
да играемъ	пусть играемъ, играемте	let us play
играйте		play
да играють	пусть играють	let them play

The forms with да express desire; those with пусть permission.

The original imperative has only two forms, играй, играйте, and in Old Russian играй was the correct form of both the 2nd and the 3rd person singular.

The form in и, ѝ, й, ѣ (e.g. сохни, держи, дѣлай, сядь) is used for all numbers and persons in phrases which have no imperative meaning.

#### (1) Adverbially.

e.g. пожалуйста	please (ста suffix)
пожалуй*	I consent, so be it
чай*	(чаять expect) so be it
пусть or пускай	so be it
кажись	apparently
гляди	apparently
небось	(for небойсь do not fear) apparently
пойди	(for пойдѣ from пойдти) apparently
почтѣ	almost

---

\* Probably these are abbreviated forms of пожалуйю, чаю.

дай with the perfect future "if I only could."

e.g. Вотъ дай унесу́ мѣшочекъ огурцовъ, прода́мъ.

If I can carry off this sack of cucumbers, I will sell it.

дава́й with the infinitive.

e.g. Дава́й игра́ть. Let us play.

The answer may be дава́й! Let us! = Yes, please; willingly.

(2) As a preterite.\* The form is invariable, and expresses a sudden action.

e.g. Отку́да ни возьмѣ́сь from out of the clouds.  
(Literally, from wherever it came.)

Съ го́ря да съ то́ски... я возьмѣ́ да всё ей разска́жи.

What with pity and grief I told her everything.

Чего́-жъ бы я въ до́мѣ не зна́лъ? Кажѣ́сь, всё зна́ю.

What do I not know of at home? I think I know everything.

Поста́вила на столъ на́питки и заку́ски раз́ные, и поу́тру ранёхонько бу́дитъ и дава́й распра́шивать.

She set various foods and drinks on the table; wakes up in the morning, and began asking [literally "and let me ask!"].

So, too, гля́дь he looked up, — lo! хва́тъ he seized; дѣ́рни, e.g. дѣ́рни менѣ́ the idea occurred to me; у́гору́зди, e.g. у́гору́зди менѣ́ the idea occurred to me.

---

\* This usage is in accord with the older grammar, which had a 3rd person singular preterite in this form.

(3) As a conditional, v. § 90, III. (2).

(4) One past tense, *помѣлъ*, is used as an imperative, equivalent to "get out." The explanation is that the older language had the full form *будь помѣлъ* (*будь* imperative of *быть*).

e.g. *Пошли вонъ, дурачки!*  
Out you go, you fools!

## § 92. FURTHER ILLUSTRATIONS OF THE ASPECTS.

Russian has two future forms, perfective and imperfective.

e.g. *Въ будущемъ году буду заниматься химіей.*  
Next year I shall study chemistry.  
*Завтра займусь музыкой.*  
To-morrow I shall be busy with my music.

*Remember буду and стану can never be used with a perfective infinitive.*

The perfective implies definition of object, and completion of purpose; the imperfective the duration or method of the process.

Instances:—

*Лѣтомъ онъ ходилъ въ пальто* (imperfective).  
In the summer he walked about in an overcoat.  
(French "paletot"; indeclinable in Russian.)  
*Онъ нерѣдко хаживалъ въ отцовскій домъ.*  
He often went to his father's house.  
(The iterative, expressing discontinuous frequent action.)



Тотъ, который прохаживается около этого дома  
отъ десяти часовъ до полудня называется  
Никитинымъ.

The man who saunters round this house from  
10 to 12 a.m. is called Nikitin.

Онъ шёлъ въ Москвѣ he was going to Moscow.

Онъ пошёлъ на вокзалъ.

He went to the railway station (perfective  
and definitive).

Я видалъ виды на своёмъ вѣкѣ!

I have seen wonderful things in my life!  
(imperfective; general).

Я увидалъ Анну на башнѣ.

I caught a sight of Anne on the tower (per-  
fective).

Я увидалъ въ гостинницѣ одного знакомаго.

I saw an acquaintance in the hotel.

(I.e. I just saw him for an instant; perfective.)

Тамъ-же видѣлъ много иностранцевъ.

I also saw many foreigners there.

(There is no definiteness in the action.)

It has repeatedly been stated that the "aspects" are best understood as devices for supplementing the defective tense-system, there being in modern Russian no inflections save for the present tense. The following table illustrates this adaptation of the "aspects."

Very few verbs, if any, possess all the aspects; few possess as many as *шептать* or *выдирать*. The iterative is in such cases expressed by the present form, and the perfective signifies both the aoristic and a completed action in the past.

A few verbs have an "abstract" and "concrete" aspect; for these, v. §§ 59, I. (4) and 59, II. and III.

SCHEME OF A RUSSIAN VERB WITH FULL ASPECTS.  
ARRANGED AS TENSES AND MOODS.

*Present.*

	To tear asunder.	To whisper.
Infinitive :	выди́рать	шепта́ть
Verbal noun :	выди́ра́нiе	шепта́нiе
Part. indecl. act. :	выди́рая	шепча́
Part. decl. active :	выди́рающ́ий	шепча́ющ́ий
Part. passive :	выди́рае́мый	шепча́емый
Indicative :	выди́раю, -е́шь, -ю́ть	шепчу́, шепчу́тъ
Imperative :	выди́рай	шепчи́

*Imperfect.*

Indicative :	выди́ралъ	шепта́лъ
Part. indecl. act. :	выди́равъ, -а́вши	шепта́въ, -а́вши
Part. decl. active :	выди́равш́ий	шепта́вш́ий

*Imperfect iterative.*

Indicative :	Same as	ше́птывалъ
Part. indecl. act. :	Imperfect	ше́птывавъ, -авши
Part. decl. active :	throughout,	ше́птывавш́ий

Тотъ, который прохаживается около этого дома  
отъ десяти часовъ до полудня называется  
Никитинымъ.

The man who saunters round this house from  
10 to 12 a.m. is called Nikítin.

Онъ шёлъ въ Москвѣ he was going to Moscow.

Онъ пошёлъ на вокзалъ.

He went to the railway station (perfective  
and definitive).

Я видалъ виды на своёмъ вѣкѣ!

I have seen wonderful things in my life!  
(imperfective; general).

Я увидалъ Анну на башнѣ.

I caught a sight of Anne on the tower (per-  
fective).

Я увидѣлъ въ гостинницѣ одного знакомаго.

I saw an acquaintance in the hotel.

(I.e. I just saw him for an instant; perfective.)

Тамъ-же видѣлъ много иностранцевъ.

I also saw many foreigners there.

(There is no definiteness in the action.)

It has repeatedly been stated that the "aspects" are best understood as devices for supplementing the defective tense-system, there being in modern Russian no inflections save for the present tense. The following table illustrates this adaptation of the "aspects."

Very few verbs, if any, possess all the aspects; few possess as many as *шептать* or *выдирать*. The iterative is in such cases expressed by the present form, and the perfective signifies both the aoristic and a completed action in the past.

A few verbs have an "abstract" and "concrete" aspect; for these, v. §§ 59, I. (4) and 59, II. and III.

SCHEME OF A RUSSIAN VERB WITH FULL ASPECTS.  
ARRANGED AS TENSES AND MOODS.

*Present.*

	To tear asunder.	To whisper.
Infinitive :	выди́рать	шепта́ть
Verbal noun :	выди́ра́ние	шепта́ние
Part. indecl. act. :	выди́рая	шепча́
Part. decl. active :	выди́рающий	шепча́щий
Part. passive :	выди́раемый	шепча́емый
Indicative :	выди́раю, -ешь, -ютъ	шепчу́, шепчу́тъ
Imperative :	выди́рай	шепчи́

*Imperfect.*

Indicative :	выди́ралъ	шепта́лъ
Part. indecl. act. :	выди́равъ, -áвши	шепта́въ, -áвши
Part. decl. active :	выди́равшій	шепта́вшій

*Imperfect iterative.*

Indicative :	Same as	ше́птывалъ
Part. indecl. act. :	Imperfect	ше́птывавъ, -авши
Part. decl. active :	throughout,	ше́птывавшій

*Perfect active.*

	To tear asunder.	To whisper.
Infinitive :	выдрать	
Verbal noun :	выдрание*	Same as
Part. indeclin. :	выдравъ, -авши	Aorist
Part. declinable :	выдравши	throughout.
Indicative :	выдралъ	
Imperative :	выдри	

*Perfect.*

Part. passive :	{ выдранный } { выдиранный }	шёпанный
-----------------	---------------------------------	----------

*Aorist.*

Infinitive :	выдернуть	шепнуть
Verbal noun :	выдернүtie*	шепнүtie*
Part. indecl. :	выдернувъ, -увши	шепнувъ, -увши
Part. declinable :	выдернувший	шепнувший
Part. passive :	выдернутый	шепнутый
Imperative :	выдери	шепни

*Future.*

Continuous :	бѹду выдирать	бѹду шептáть
Iterative :	” ”	бѹду шёптывáть*
Perfective :	выдру, -ёшь, -ѹтъ	Same as Aoristic.
Aoristic :	выдерну, -ешь, -утъ	шепну́, -ёшь, -ѹтъ

*Conditionals* can be formed from any *past* tense by adding the particle бы.

---

\* Seldom used.

## § 93. AUXILIARY PARTICLES.

The Russian verb has only one past tense, and one present. It has been explained how the aspects supplement the tense system, the imperfective supplying an imperfect tense [v. § 42 (2) (i) and (ii), § 59, § 90, III., and § 92]; the perfective a past tense of completion, whether preterite perfect or pluperfect, and a determinate future; the iterative a tense to express frequency of action; and the abstract aspect the power as contrasted with the act. Further, the particle *бы* partially replaces the subjunctive mood.

There are other particles and auxiliaries used, e.g. *пусть, да, дай, давай* [v. § 91], principally with the imperative; and the use of some others, e.g. *давно́, было, бывало, стану, буду, будто, только, что*, is important.

(1) *давно́* (*да́вный* in the past) or *уже́* (already) is used to express the pluperfect.

e.g. *Онъ давно́ иска́лъ до́чку.*

He had long been searching for his daughter  
(imperfective).

*Ты уже́ пригото́вилъ обѣ́дъ.*

You had prepared dinner (perfective).

(2) *буду*, as. has been seen [§ 92], expresses the imperfective future [also v. § 58].

(3) *стану* also expresses the imperfective future, but has a remoter meaning, like the English "I am going to . . ." or the French "*je vais . . .*"

e.g. *Стану собира́ть мои́ ве́щи въ чемода́нъ.*

I am going to pack my things in the  
portmanteau.

(4) *бúдто* or *какъ бúдто* means "as though."

e.g. *Онъ всталъ какъ бúдто чтóбы уходить.*

He got up as though he were going out.

*Онъ улыбу́лся какъ бúдто егó братъ пошути́лъ.*

He smiled as though his brother had made a joke

(5) *то́лько что* means "just."

e.g. *Онъ то́лько что похорони́лъ своегó отца́ какъ померла́ и мать.*

He had just buried his father, when his mother died.

(6) *быва́ю* with the past tense adds a meaning of "he used to do," of a continuous practice.

e.g. *Я быва́ю посѣща́лъ эту семью.*

I used to visit this family.

(7) *хот́я* (or *хоть*) is used for "though"; in combination with *бы* and a past tense, *бъ* when the sense imports unreality.

e.g. *Хот́я ты былъ ху́денькій, на́до было постарáться.*  
Though you were ill, you should have tried.

*Хот́я я бúду въ Москвѣ, по мнѣ нельзя́ бúдетъ пови́дѣть ва́шихъ роди́телей.*

Though I shall be at Moscow, I shall not be able to see your parents.

*Хот́я-бъ я былъ са́мымъ си́льнѣйшимъ на свѣтѣ, бѣдныхъ я-бъ не угнетáлъ.*

Even if I were the most powerful man on earth, I would not oppress the poor.

(8) *было* with the imperfective or perfective past signifies that the action contemplated, in the clause into which *было* is inserted, was never completed: as something—in the following sentence—intervened.

e.g. Я дѣлалъ было пригото́вленія чтобы́ пригласи́ть васъ къ себѣ въ го́сти, когда́ меня́ вызвали изъ Лондона.

I was getting ready to ask you to a party, but was summoned away from London.

Я дочита́лъ ва́ше сочи́неніе и уложи́лъ было́ для́ по́чты, когда́ непри́ятелѣ сожгли́ мой до́мъ.

I had finished reading your composition, and had packed it up to post, but the enemy burned my house.

(9) The future perfect (I shall have . . .) cannot be expressed in Russian by any one corresponding tense.

e.g. Когда́ я бу́ду впло́нѣ удовле́творѣнъ, меня́ уже́ не бу́детъ у живы́хъ.

When I shall have been satisfied completely, I shall no longer be alive.

Я побѣгу́ до́мой и бу́ду наза́дъ, пре́жде чѣмъ ты вста́нешь.

I shall have run home and back, before you even get up.

#### § 94. THE IMPERSONAL CONSTRUCTION.

I. Many verbs are in themselves impersonal; e.g. *ка́жется* it seems, *ока́зывается* it transpires.\*

---

\* *Ка́заться* to seem, *ока́зывать* to render, *сказа́ть* tell, *приказа́ть* order, *разсказа́ть* narrate, *указа́ть* indicate, *показа́ть* show, *отказа́ть* dismiss, refuse; all of them perfective, the imperfectives being *ока́зывать*, etc



Such verbs are used only in the 3rd person singular, as in Latin or Greek without *any* pronoun.

II. There is no one word for generality like "one," "man," "*on*"; either the 2nd person singular, or the 3rd person plural is used.

e.g. Говорѣтъ one says.

Чѣмъ болѣе стараешься, тѣмъ болѣе ошибаешься.

The more one tries, the more mistakes one makes.

III. Russian has a predilection for impersonal construction in the passive with *ся* [v. § 60], the agent or subject being put into the dative.

e.g. хочу I wish, or мнѣ хочется; видѣть I saw, мнѣ видѣлось; спать to sleep, мнѣ спалось хорошо I slept soundly; думаю I think, мнѣ думается I think; жить to live, въ Англіи свободно проживается life is free in England.

As a rule the reflexive passive construction imports a remoteness or generality to the sentence, whereas the active records a precise and determinate fact.

#### § 95. АПОСОПАТЕД FORMS OF SOME VERBS.

A few verbs signifying a brusque action or noise have an *invariable* form for the past tense.\*

E.g. the interjections ахъ! охъ! ухъ! эхъ! are sometimes used like parts of a verb, meaning "to cry out" ахъ, эхъ, etc.

---

\* In many cases very similar to the apocopated past of imperfectives in -нуть [v. § 50, II.], and the imperative preterites [v. § 91].

So, too, the past of inchoatives in -нуть; e.g. прыгъ jumped, стукъ knocked, and similarly бухъ bump.

e.g. Бухъ — поплыли въ водахъ глубокыхъ.

Plump — they swam in the deep waters.

Они подошли къ дому и стукъ въ окно.

They approached the house and rat-ta-tap-tap on the window.

Лиса пустилась къ лесу и юркъ въ нору.

The fox started for the wood, and dashed into a hole.

#### § 96. THE REFLEXIVE VERBS.

Under this head a few special phrases may be discussed. It has already been stated [§ 60] what the distinction is between passives and reflexives.

e.g. Этой войной разрушились всѣ ходячія литературныя представленія.

In this war all the current literary notions were destroyed.

Уничтожали самихъ себя оба противника (or уничтожили, perfective).

Both combatants annihilated themselves.

Where an action is done for someone at his orders French uses the exact phrase “faire . . .”; English leaves it to be understood; the Russian usage will be illustrated by the example.

e.g. The workmen built a house.

L'ouvrier bâtit une maison.

Рабочій построилъ домъ.

*But* I have built a country-house.

Je me suis fait bâtir une maison de campagne.

Я построилъ себя усадьбу.

Женá обóулась.

The woman has put her shoes on.

Elle s'est chaussée, *or* elle s'est fait chausser.

Я побрéюсь.

I will shave [myself] or be shaved.

Я брéюсь самъ.

I shave *myself*.

Many verbs are reflexive in Russian, where they would not be so in English.

In the first place the reflexive indicates that the object is identical with the subject.

e.g. мýться to wash (oneself), обóуваться to put on shoes, etc., одéваться to dress (oneself), etc.

In the second place [v. § 60] it indicates the passive (as in French).

e.g. Свирѣпости продолжáются.

Les barbaries se continuent (are being continued).

Я лиши́лся мáтери.

I have lost my father.

Онъ лиши́лся жízни.

He has died.

Онъ лиши́лъ себя́ жízни.

He has committed suicide.

In the third place many verbs are naturally reflexive or deponent.

e.g. горд́иться чѣмъ to boast

бóиться чегó to fear

Fourthly, many verbs with the reflexive import what was in Greek the middle voice, i.e. an action directed to the purpose of or affecting the subject of the verb, though the object governed be not the subject of the sentence.

e.g. Онъ стучить въ дверь.

He is knocking at the door.

Онъ стучится въ дверь.

He is knocking at the door (with some expectation concerning himself).

Волосы старца (or у старца) бѣлѣютъ.

An old man's hair goes white.

Снѣжныя вершины горъ бѣлѣются въ отдалѣніи.

The snow-peaks of the mountain are whitening in the distance.

Слѣшать to hear.

Слѣшаться obey.

Мухи кусаютъ.

Flies sting [bite].

Моя кошка кусается.

My cat bites (as her habit).

Признавать to acknowledge.

Признаваться to admit, confess.

Я призналъ его правымъ.

I acknowledged him to be right.

Я признался, что я не былъ совсѣмъ безвѣннымъ.

I confessed I was not altogether guiltless.

## § 97. RUSSIAN RELATIONSHIPS.

In the matter of words descriptive of relationships, Russian has an extraordinary abundance of special words.

Kinship is родствó.

Degrees of relationship стéпени родствá :—

General terms общія названія.

прéдокъ прéдки	ancestors
потóмки	descendants
рóдственникъ	kinsman
рóдственница	kinswoman
родъ (рóда)	family (genealogically)
семья́ (фамíлiя)	a family

Special designations особыя названія :—

Lineal descent поколѣнiе нисходящее.

сынъ	son	} поколѣнiя по прямой линии generations in the direct line
дочь	daughter	
дѣти	children	
внукъ	grandson	
внучка	granddaughter	
внучáта	grandchildren [v. § 26 (5)]	
правнукъ, etc.	great grandson	

Lineal ascent поколѣнiе восходящее.

отецъ *	father
мать	mother
родители	parents
дѣдъ	grandfather
бабушка (ба́бка)	grandmother
прадѣдъ	great grandfather
прабабушка	great grandmother
прапрадѣдъ, etc.	great great grandfather
пращуръ	great great great grandfather

---

\* Бáтюшка in familiar speech.

Collateral relations *побѣчное родствѣ.*

братъ *	brother
сестра́	sister
дѣ́дя	uncle
тѣ́тя, тѣ́тка	aunt
† стрѣ́й	uncle, paternal
† стрѣ́я	aunt, paternal
‡ у́й	uncle, maternal
‡ у́йка	aunt, maternal
† у́ецъ, у́йчи́чъ, -ечка.	first cousin on father's side
† стрѣ́йчи́чъ, -ечка	first cousin, maternal side
пле́мѣ́нникъ, -и́ца	nephew, niece
братѣ́нничъ, ‡ -и́ца	nephew, niece, by brother
сѣ́стричъ, ‡ -и́ца	nephew, niece, by sister
двоу́родный братъ	first cousin §
(сестра́)	
троу́родный братъ	second cousin, and so on
двоу́родный пле́мѣ́н- никъ	first cousin once removed in second generation downwards

Similarly—

троу́родная ба́бушка	great aunt
троу́родный дѣ́дъ	great uncle

These words for relationship are, however, seldom used beyond the third generation ; in ordinary language a third cousin would be *родственникъ въ четвёртомъ колѣнѣ*, a kinsman in the fourth generation.

---

\* Used colloquially to express friendly connection.

† All of these are obsolete or nearly so.

‡ Disused now.

§ I.e. a brother in the second generation.

## Relations by marriage родство по браку (свойство\*).

	<i>From the husband's side.</i>	<i>From the wife's side.</i>
Father-in-law	тесть	свѣкорь
Mother-in-law	тѣща	свекрѡвь
Brother-in-law	шуринъ <i>or</i> зять [v. § 24 (2)]	дѣверь
Sister-in-law	своичница, <i>or</i> свесь, <i>or</i> невѣстка	золѡвка
Son-in-law	зять	зять
Daughter-in-law	сноха <i>or</i> невѣстка	сноха <i>or</i> невѣстка
Sister-in-law's husband	своикъ	золѡвкинъ мужъ
Wife of brother-in-law	ятровъ†	ятровъ†

I.e. my sister's husband is зять; my brother's wife невѣстка; but my wife's sister is свесь *or* своичница, and her husband свокъ; my husband's sister золѡвка. In English "brother-in-law," "sister-in-law," leave all these relationships indeterminable.

Other terms to be noted are:—

отчимъ	step-father
мачеха	step-mother
пасынокъ	step-son
падчерица	step-daughter
сводный братъ	step-brother
сводная сестра	step-sister

\* But свойство property.

† Obsolete.

крѣстный отецъ	godfather
крѣстная мать	godmother
крѣстникъ (крѣстный сынъ)	godson
крѣстница (крѣстная дочь)	goddaughter
невѣста	bride
женѣхъ	bridegroom
женáтый	married (of a man)
замужняя	married (of a woman)
бракъ	marriage
свáдьба	wedding

*Note.*—мужъ женѣтся на жену, *but* женá выйдѣтъ замужъ на когó.

Онъ выдалъ Анну замужъ на Илю.  
He gave Anne in marriage to Ilyá.

Моя сестра замужемъ.  
My sister is married.

Замужство, замужество marriage (of a woman).  
Женѣтъба marriage (of a man).

Relations of the half-blood are said to be *единокрѣвный*; e.g. мой братъ *единокрѣвный* my half-brother, and are further distinguished as *братъ по матери*, *сестра по отцу*, etc.

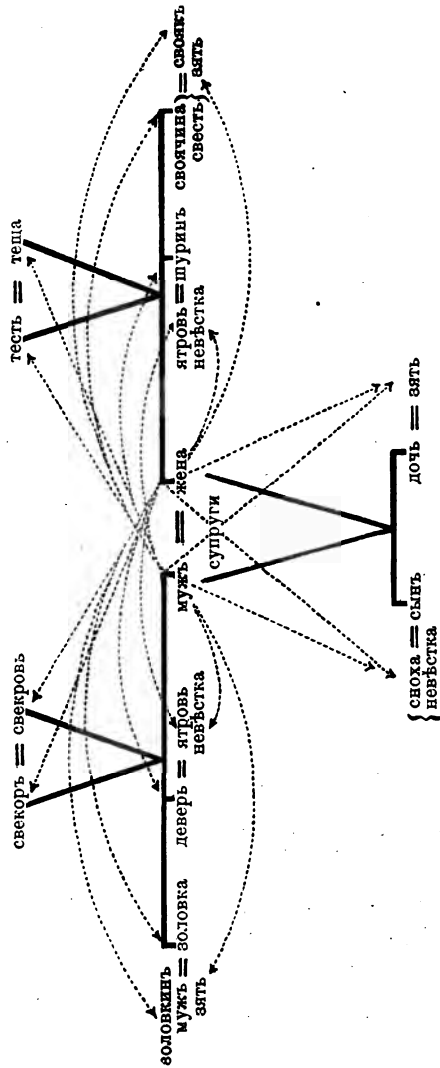


TABLE OF KINSHIP (Таблица Ро́дственникóвъ).

TABLE OF KINSHIP (Таблица Родственных Связей).									
Предки — Ancestors.					Потомки — Descendants.				
прапуръ ...	прапуръ ...	прапуръ ...	прапуръ ...	прапуръ ...	прапуръ ...	прапуръ ...	прапуръ ...	прапуръ ...	прапуръ ...
пятиродный прапуръ ...	прапуръ ...	прапуръ ...	прапуръ ...	прапуръ ...	прапуръ ...	прапуръ ...	прапуръ ...	прапуръ ...	прапуръ ...
5 род. четырёхродный прапуръ ...	прапуръ ...	прапуръ ...	прапуръ ...	прапуръ ...	прапуръ ...	прапуръ ...	прапуръ ...	прапуръ ...	прапуръ ...
5 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...
5 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...
5 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...
5 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...
5 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...
5 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...
5 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...
5 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...
5 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...
5 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...
5 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...
5 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...
5 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...
5 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...
5 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...
5 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...
5 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...
5 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...
5 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...
5 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...
5 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...
5 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...
5 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...
5 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...
5 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...
5 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...
5 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...
5 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...
5 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...
5 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...
5 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...
5 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...
5 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...
5 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...
5 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...
5 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...
5 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...
5 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...
5 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...
5 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...
5 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...
5 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...
5 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...
5 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...
5 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...
5 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...
5 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...
5 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...
5 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...
5 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...
5 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...
5 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...
5 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...
5 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...
5 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...
5 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...
5 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...
5 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...
5 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...
5 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...
5 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...
5 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...
5 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...
5 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...
5 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...
5 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...
5 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...
5 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...
5 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...
5 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...
5 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...
5 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...
5 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...
5 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...
5 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...
5 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...
5 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...
5 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...
5 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...
5 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...
5 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...
5 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...	4 род. дѣть ...</							

TABLE OF AFFINITIES (Таблица Свойственниковъ).

## Родители по браку или по свойству.



2

Е.г. Женатые на другъ сестёръ называются между собою свояки. Жёны другъ братьевъ между собою ятрови. Золовка это мужнина сестра. Шурьями называются женнины братья.

Зять имѣетъ двойное значеніе; онъ или сестринъ, или дочериннъ мужъ; такимъ-же образомъ невестка есть, или братнина жена или сынбывна.

## ETYMOLOGY.

Under this head a list of formatives of nouns, verbs, and adjectives is inserted in alphabetical order. Except for those few whose accentuation is fixed, i.e. either absolutely atonic, or else always stressed, and subject to special rules stated in the body of the grammar, the rule is that *these terminations are accented, whenever the primary form is capable of throwing its accent forward in any inflection* (e.g. столъ, столá and столáрь; but общій, обще, общество; товарищъ, товарищество); they are *unaccented, if the primary form has a fixed accent on its stem*. Thus, too, царь, царя, царяца; but начальникъ, начальника, начальница; работа, работникъ, работать, etc.

Some of the terminations are now "dead," i.e. disused, except in survivals. When this is so, a special remark is made to this effect.

The letter ъ will be found prefixed to many. This indicates that in composition the previous sounds, vowels or consonants, must be modified. [v. § 5.]

## § 98. THE NOUNS.

I. Foreign terminations in common use. These are few in number and easily learnt.

-ция, in foreign words, = "-tion"; e.g. акция share, нация nation, позиция position. Always accented as shown.

-ёръ, i.e. the French "-aire" in foreign words; e.g. акционеръ. The plural is in -ы.

- ѣръ, i.e. the French “-eur” in foreign words;  
e.g. актѣръ. The plural is in -ы.
- измъ = English “-ism.” This suffix is mostly  
accented.
- ѣсть = English “-ist,” used in foreign words;  
e.g. артѣсть artist.
- логія = English “-logy” in foreign words; e.g.  
физіологія physiology. Accented as shown.
- торъ, -соръ, in foreign words; the Latin “tor”;  
e.g. авторъ author, профессоръ professor. The  
termination is unaccented; the plural in а  
or ы.

## II. Disused or dead suffixes.

- ба (dead). Nouns denoting action, mostly  
derived from nouns; e.g. свѣдѣба wedding  
(свать), дружѣба friendship (другъ), судѣба  
judgment (судъ). These words are mostly  
paroxytone.
- ва unaccented (dead). Nouns denoting action of  
verbs; e.g. бритѣва razor, клятѣва oath. These  
words are generally paroxytone, unless derived  
from verbs.
- мя (мени) neuter (dead). Suffix of a number of  
nouns such as имя name, пламя flame. Corre-  
sponds to Latin “-men,” always dissyllabic  
and paroxytone. [v. § 21.]
- улъ (dead). A termination found in a few Tatar  
words; e.g. есаулъ captain, караулъ sentry.
- ѣ accented, masc. second declension (dead).  
Names of agents; e.g. судѣѣ judge.

## III. Patronymics.

-ичъ, in patronymics; feminine -ична. [v. § 83, I.]

-овичъ, -евичъ, in patronymics; feminine -овна, -евна. [v. § 83, I.]

-овъ, -евъ, in patronymics; feminine -ова, -ева. [v. § 83, I.]

## IV. Termination to denote the female.

-а; e.g. раба́ (раба́) slave.

-ева; e.g. коро́ль king, королева́.

-ица, forming feminines and nouns from verbs; e.g. висѣ́лица gallows, племя́нница niece.

-ша (never accented), denotes the wife of an official; e.g. фельдфе́рша the wife of a state messenger, до́кторша the doctor's wife.

-ыня, -иня, feminine formation; e.g. геро́иня heroine, кня́гиня countess, боги́ня goddess, судáрыня, ба́рыня mistress.

## V. Abstract nouns.

-знь fem. (dead), forms abstracts; e.g. болѣ́знь illness.

-изна (dead), forms abstracts; e.g. отчѣ́зна fatherland, новѣ́зناً novelty.

-ина, abstracts from adjectives; e.g. глубина́ depth, родина́ time.

-ѣ́ня, -иня, forms abstracts from adjectives; e.g. горды́ня pride.

- ie (unaccented), forms abstracts from adjectives ;  
e.g. **весёлые** mirth.
- ость, -еть (never accented), forms abstract nouns  
of the third declension from adjectives,  
and retains accent of the adjective, unless it  
is oxytone ; e.g. **скóрость**, **скóрый** quick ;  
**двѣжнѣмость**, **двѣжнѣмый** moveable ; **на́гость**,  
**нагóй** naked ; **свѣ́жесть**, **свѣ́жий** freshness.
- тá forms abstract nouns from adjectives ; e.g.  
**быстротá** speed, **красотá** beauty. Almost  
always accented as shown.
- щина (never accented), forms abstract nouns from  
nouns, descriptive of a state of affairs ;  
e.g. **Облóмовщина** Oblómovism (**Облóмов**, the  
hero of a novel by **Гончарóв**) ; **пугачёвщина**,  
the state of rebellion induced by the rebel  
**Пугачóв** ; **Толстóвщина**, Tolstoyan life.
- ство forms abstracts from adjectives and nouns.  
One of the commonest terminations ; e.g.  
**лѣ́карство** medicine, **товáрищество** society,  
**воровствó** thieving.

## VI. Verbal nouns.

- ирóвка forms nouns of action from verbs in  
-йрóвать ; e.g. **группирóвка** the grouping,  
**марширóвка** the marching. Always thus  
accented.
- нѣ (seldom accented), forming verbal nouns.  
[v. § 42 (2) (i).] Note, however, -нѣ́ (**вранѣ́**,  
**бранѣ́**).
- нѣ (very seldom accented), verbal noun. [v. § 49, II.]

## VII. The agent or implement.

-акъ, -якъ, an agent; e.g. батра́къ workman, вожа́къ a leader. The accent is thrown forward in all the terminations. Always oxytone. [cf. § 25, I.]

-аръ, -яръ, an agent, derives nouns from nouns; e.g. столя́ръ joiner, боча́ръ cooper. The plural is in -а́.

-арь, an agent; e.g. зна́харь magician; понама́рь sexton.

-ецъ, agent or implement; e.g. при́имецъ a receiver, вале́цъ a roller, боре́цъ a wrestler.

-икъ, an agent. The nominative is accented according to the noun from which the word is derived, when the word is oxytone the accent is thrown forward in the oblique cases; e.g. алхи́мникъ alchemist, разска́зчикъ narrator, ямщи́къ coachman.

-ка (unaccented), an implement; e.g. винто́вка a rifle, вóзка carrying.

-никъ, an agent, derived from adjectives and nouns, v. -икъ; e.g. алты́нникъ a miser, бары́шникъ a jobber, возни́къ a draught horse. Feminine -ница. When -икъ is accented it throws the accent forward on to all the terminations.

-тель, an agent, forms nouns from verbs; e.g. учи́тель teacher, писа́тель writer. The termination is never accented, the accentuation follows the infinitive. Sometimes the words have a secondary meaning, e.g. указа́тель index.

-у́нь fem., -у́нья (accented), depreciatory, agent from a verb; e.g. болту́нь, -у́нья chatterbox, бѣгу́нь runaway.

-чикъ, -щикъ, an agent; e.g. буфѣтчикъ a butler, ямщикъ a coachman, вальщикъ a paper-hanger.

# VIII. Diminutives.\*

## (1) Masculine nouns of first declension.

-ѣкъ, -екъ, diminutive suffix for masculines; e.g. кружо́къ circle, кругъ.

-я (never accented), forms diminutives of proper names; e.g. Пѣтя (Петръ), Ко́ля (Никола́й), Серёжа (Серге́й).

-о́чекъ, -ѣчекъ, diminutive denoting affection for masculine nouns; e.g. дружо́чекъ (другъ), кружо́чекъ (кругъ).

-и́шко (masc. gen. -и́шка, etc.), and -и́шка, feminine (always thus accented), forms depreciatory diminutives from masculine nouns; e.g. сели́шко (село́), ворѣшка (воръ thief, pick-pocket).

## (2) Neuter nouns of first declension.

-ѣо (seldom accented), forms diminutive of neuter nouns; e.g. крыльцо́, крыло́чко; *but* очко́.

-ѣце, diminutive; e.g. зѣркальѣце mirror.

---

\* In Russian the use of diminutives and augmentatives is very common, the subtleties of meaning are difficult of translation into English, and can only be gathered by practice. It is important for the student to recognise the forms.



-ечко, -ышко, -ушко (never accented), forms diminutives of affection from neuter nouns; e.g. со́лнышко (солнце), гнѣздышко.

-ышко, -ишко, neut., and -ышка, -ишка, feminine, (always accented), forms depreciatory diminutives from nouns; e.g. селѣшко nasty little village, коротышка pigmy, землѣшка barren piece of ground, городѣшко ugly little town.

(3) Feminines (and masculines) of the second declension.

-ька (unaccented), diminutive of feminines; e.g. жѣнка little woman; кни́жка little book. This same termination forms diminutives of proper names; e.g. Сашка (Александръ), Серёжка (Сергѣй).

-енька (never accented), forms diminutives of affection from the second declension; e.g. ду́шенька (душа́) little soul, darling.

-ица, -и́чка, forms diminutives of affection from feminine nouns; e.g. сестри́ца.

-очка, -ечка (never accented), forms diminutives of affection from second declension; e.g. скаме́ечка little stool, ка́рточка visiting card.

-ушка, -юшка (never accented), forms diminutives of affection from nouns of second declension; e.g. ма́тушка (ма́ть) mother, ба́тушка (ба́тя) father.

-ёнка (always accented), forms depreciatory diminutives; e.g. лошаде́нка nasty little horse, коро́вёнка nasty little cow.

-у́ша, -ю́ша, -у́шка, -ю́шка (always accented), forms diminutives of depreciation from nouns of the second declension; e.g. Катю́ша from Ка́тя Katy, Аксёу́ша (from Акси́ня).

#### IX. Augmentatives.

-и́ще (masc. and neuter), -и́ща (feminine), forms augmentatives from nouns; e.g. доми́ще a big house (masc.); ду́рища a great fool (feminine); полотни́ще a big piece of cloth.

In some nouns there is no augmentative sense; e.g. жили́ще abode, кладби́ще cemetery (generally accented on the first syllable), учи́лище a school. When -и́ще is not an augmentative it is, as a rule, unaccented.

-и́но, -и́на, forms augmentatives from nouns, generally depreciatory; e.g. доми́на a very big house.

#### X. Miscellaneous.

-ани́нъ, -яни́нъ, mostly used to denote members of nations, religions, etc. [v. § 24 (5).] Accented either oxytone or paroxytone.

-а́чь, forms descriptive nouns; e.g. борода́чь a long beard, бога́чь a rich man.

-е́жъ (accented, disused), forms nouns from verbs; e.g. паде́жъ case (пада́ть), грабе́жъ plunder (гра́бить); in the oblique cases падежа́, etc.

-ёнокъ, plural -ята, the young of animals; e.g. волчѣнокъ, волчáта wolf; галчѣнокъ jackdaw; but щенóкъ, щенáта puppy; волчóкъ wolf's cub. [v. § 26 (5).]

-ло, from verbs; noun describes action of verb and follows accent of the past tense in лъ; e.g. началó beginning, одѣлó blanket, вѣяло winnowing-fan, ваяло chisel.

### § 99. ADJECTIVAL SUFFIXES.

-авый (dead); e.g. лукавый sly, величáвый stately. Accented on termination -áв.

-вáтый, a termination mainly used with adjectives denoting substance, generally accented -вáтый; e.g. аляповáтый clumsy, виновáтый guilty, витиевáтый eloquent.

-овáтый, -евáтый, added to adjectives, often has the sense of "-ish"; e.g. синевáтый bluish, бѣловáтый whitish. Always thus accented.

-вѣтый, descriptive adjective (from nouns); e.g. грановѣтый faceted, даровѣтый talented.

-икій, adjectival suffix; e.g. великій big.

-истый, from nouns, "resemblance"; e.g. золотѣстый gold-coloured, глинѣстый clayey.

-ическій forms adjectives mostly from words derived from Greek; e.g. арифметическій arithmetical, практическій practical. Accented as shown.

- ий (unaccented), forms possessive adjectives ; e.g. ворóний a crow's. [v. § 35.]
- ливый forms adjectives from nouns ; e.g. счáсливъ happy, стыдлívый shamefast.
- мый, present passive participle, equivalent to "-ble." [v. § 89, II.]
- ов-, -ев-, one of the commonest ways of forming adjectives of all sorts ; e.g. боковóй lateral, Петрóвъ of Peter, Алексéвъ of Alexis, верховóй upper, тísсовый of yew, вѣковóй age-long.
- óкий adjectival ending, -окъ substantive ; e.g. глубóкий deep, знатóкъ an expert, зрачóкъ pupil of eye.
- онький, -енький, forms adjectives with diminutive meaning ; e.g. малéнький very small, плóхонький unwell, тáхонький silent.
- учий, -ячий, former pres. part. act., now adjectival ; e.g. могúчий powerful, горáчий hot, зыбúчий vacillating. [v. § 44.]
- чатый, forming descriptive adjectives ; e.g. колéнчатый knotted, зубчáтый notched. Accentuation follows that of principal noun.
- чивъ, forming adjectives ; e.g. задúмчивый thoughtful, говорчивый talkative. The termination is unaccented.
- шний, adjectival from nouns ; e.g. домáшний domestic, вчерáшний yesterday's, тепéренний of the present time.

-**ьскій, -ьскою**, forms adjectives of all sorts. There is no shortened predicative form. The accentuation is that of the noun from which the adjective is derived.

A few words accent -**ьскою** ; e.g. **мужскою** male, **людскою** public, **городскою** civic.

-**ьный, -ьной**, one of the commonest ways of forming adjectives of all sorts ; e.g. **больной** ill, **государственный** of the State, **важный** important.

-**ннѣ**, forms possessive adjectives in the second declension ; e.g. **дядинѣ** the uncle's. [v. § 34(2).]

-**ѣйшій, -айшій, -ѣе**, comparatives. [v. § 37.]

-**янный, -яной**, adjectives of substance ; e.g. **водяной** watery, **деревянный** wooden, **масляной** buttery.

#### § 100. VERBAL FORMATIONS.

-**ировать** (third conjugation), used mainly in foreign words ; e.g. **атрофировать** to atrophy. [v. § 53 (3).]

-**ить** (fourth conjugation), forms transitive verbs ; e.g. **старить** to make old, **бѣсить** to drive frantic. [v. § 59, V.]

-**нуть**, verbs of second conjugation. [v. § 50.]

-**ывать, -ивать**, iterative verbs. [v. § 59, I. (4).]

-**ѣть** (third conjugation), inceptive verbs ; e.g. **алѣть** to grow red, **краснѣть** to blush. [v. § 53 (2).]

With roots ending in **ч, ш, щ**, the termination is -**ать**, v. § 55, II.

LONDON :  
PRINTED BY WILLIAM CLOWES AND SONS, LIMITED,  
DUKE STREET, STAMFORD STREET, S.E., AND GREAT WINDMILL STREET, W.

